



# POINT GREY

## Grasshopper2 GS2-FW

### Technical Reference Manual

Version 1.0

Revised 8/29/2011



**Point Grey Research® Inc.**

12051 Riverside Way • Richmond, BC • Canada • V6W 1K7 • T (604) 242-9937 • [www.ptgrey.com](http://www.ptgrey.com)

## FCC Compliance

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

You are cautioned that any changes or modifications not expressly approved in this manual could void your authority to operate this equipment.

## Hardware Warranty

Point Grey Research®, Inc. (Point Grey) warrants to the Original Purchaser that the Camera Module provided with this package is guaranteed to be free from material and manufacturing defects for a period of two (2) years. Should a unit fail during this period, Point Grey will, at its option, repair or replace the damaged unit. Repaired or replaced units will be covered for the remainder of the original equipment warranty period. This warranty does not apply to units that, after being examined by Point Grey, have been found to have failed due to customer abuse, mishandling, alteration, improper installation or negligence. If the original camera module is housed within a case, removing the case for any purpose other than to remove the protective glass or filter over the sensor voids this warranty. This warranty does not apply to damage to any part of the optical path resulting from removal or replacement of the protective glass or filter over the camera, such as scratched glass or sensor damage.

Point Grey Research, Inc. expressly disclaims and excludes all other warranties, express, implied and statutory, including, but without limitation, warranty of merchantability and fitness for a particular application or purpose. In no event shall Point Grey Research, Inc. be liable to the Original Purchaser or any third party for direct, indirect, incidental, consequential, special or accidental damages, including without limitation damages for business interruption, loss of profits, revenue, data or bodily injury or death.

## WEEE

The symbol indicates that this product may not be treated as household waste. Please ensure this product is properly disposed as inappropriate waste handling of this product may cause potential hazards to the environment and human health. For more detailed information about recycling of this product, please contact Point Grey Research.



## Trademarks

Point Grey Research, PGR, the Point Grey Research, Inc. logo, Chameleon, Digiclops, Dragonfly, Dragonfly Express, Firefly, Flea, FlyCapture, Gazelle, Grasshopper, Ladybug, Triclops and Zebra are trademarks or registered trademarks of Point Grey Research, Inc. in Canada and other countries.

# Table of Contents

|   |           |
|---|-----------|
| <b>1 Introduction</b>                                     | <b>10</b> |
| 1.1 Using This Manual                                     | 10        |
| 1.2 GS2-FW-14S5 Specifications                            | 11        |
| 1.2.1 General Features and Specifications                 | 11        |
| 1.2.2 GS2-FW-14S5 Sensor Response                         | 12        |
| 1.3 Analog-to-Digital Conversion                          | 13        |
| <b>2 General Camera Operation</b>                         | <b>14</b> |
| 2.1 Handling Precautions and Camera Care                  | 14        |
| 2.1.1 Case Temperature and Heat Dissipation               | 14        |
| 2.2 Powering the Camera                                   | 15        |
| 2.3 Managing Camera Settings                              | 16        |
| 2.3.1 Using the Control and Status Registers              | 16        |
| 2.3.1.1 Using the Inquiry Registers                       | 17        |
| 2.3.1.2 Using the Absolute Value Registers                | 17        |
| 2.3.2 Operating System and Software Support               | 18        |
| 2.3.2.1 Macintosh and Linux OS Support                    | 18        |
| 2.3.2.2 FlyCap Demo Program                               | 18        |
| 2.3.2.3 Custom Applications Built with the FlyCapture API | 18        |
| 2.3.3 User Configuration Sets                             | 18        |
| 2.3.3.1 Memory Channel Registers                          | 19        |
| 2.4 Camera Error and Status Monitoring                    | 21        |
| 2.4.1 Status Indicator LED                                | 21        |
| 2.4.2 General Status Monitoring                           | 22        |
| 2.4.3 Error Status Registers                              | 24        |
| 2.4.4 Device Information                                  | 25        |
| 2.5 Non-Volatile Flash Memory                             | 27        |
| 2.6 Upgrading Camera Firmware                             | 28        |

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 2.7 Camera Accessories.....  | 28        |
| <b>3 Camera Interface and Connectors.....</b>  | <b>29</b> |
| 3.1 IEEE-1394b Connector.....  | 29        |
| 3.1.1 Daisy Chaining.....  | 30        |
| 3.2 Cables.....  | 30        |
| 3.3 Host Adapter Card.....   | 30        |
| 3.4 General Purpose Input/Output (GPIO).....   | 30        |
| 3.4.1 GPIO Electrical Characteristics.....   | 31        |
| 3.4.2 GPIO0 (Opto-Isolated Input) Circuit.....   | 31        |
| 3.4.3 GPIO1 (Opto-Isolated Output) Circuit.....  | 32        |
| 3.4.4 GPIO 2 / 3 (Bi-Directional) Circuit.....   | 33        |
| 3.4.4.1 Input Side.....  | 33        |
| 3.4.4.2 Output Side.....   | 33        |
| <b>4 Video Formats, Modes and Frame Rates.....</b>   | <b>35</b> |
| 4.1 Frame Rates and Camera Bandwidth.....  | 35        |
| 4.1.1 Calculating Maximum Possible Frame Rate.....   | 35        |
| 4.1.2 Maximum Number of Cameras on a Single Bus.....   | 35        |
| 4.2 Custom Video Modes Using Format_7.....   | 36        |
| 4.2.1 Exceeding Bandwidth Limitations Using Format_7.....  | 37        |
| 4.2.2 Format_7 Mode Descriptions.....  | 37        |
| 4.3 Video Format and Mode CSRs.....  | 38        |
| 4.3.1 Example: Setting a Standard Video Mode, Format and Frame Rate Using the<br>FlyCapture API..... | 39        |
| 4.4 GS2-FW-14S5 Standard Formats, Modes and Frame Rates.....   | 40        |
| 4.4.1 Standard Formats, Modes and Frame Rates.....   | 40        |
| 4.4.2 Format_7 Modes and Frame Rates.....  | 41        |
| <b>5 Image Acquisition and Transmission.....</b>   | <b>43</b> |
| 5.1 Isochronous Data Transfer.....   | 43        |
| 5.1.1 Camera Power and Isochronous Transmission.....   | 43        |

|  |    |
|--|----|
| 5.1.2 When Camera Property Settings Take Effect .....                              | 43 |
| 5.2 High Dynamic Range (HDR) Imaging .....   | 46 |
| 5.3 Pixel Formats .....  | 47 |
| 5.3.1 Y16 (16-bit Mono) Image Acquisition .....                                    | 47 |
| 5.3.2 Y8 or Y16 Raw Bayer Output .....   | 48 |
| 5.4 Automatic Inter-Camera Synchronization .....                                   | 48 |
| 5.5 Asynchronous Triggering .....  | 49 |
| 5.5.1 External Trigger Timing .....  | 49 |
| 5.5.2 Minimum Trigger Pulse Length .....   | 49 |
| 5.5.3 Maximum Frame Rate in External Trigger Mode .....                            | 50 |
| 5.5.4 Camera Behavior Between Triggers .....                                       | 50 |
| 5.5.5 Changing Video Modes While Triggering .....                                  | 50 |
| 5.5.6 Supported Trigger Modes .....  | 51 |
| 5.5.6.1 Trigger_Mode_0 ("Standard External Trigger Mode") .....                    | 51 |
| 5.5.6.2 Trigger_Mode_1 ("Bulb Shutter Mode") .....                                 | 52 |
| 5.5.6.3 Trigger_Mode_3 ("Skip Frames Mode") .....                                  | 52 |
| 5.5.6.4 Trigger_Mode_4 ("Multiple Exposure Preset Mode") .....                     | 53 |
| 5.5.6.5 Trigger_Mode_5 ("Multiple Exposure Pulse Width Mode") .....                | 53 |
| 5.5.6.6 Trigger_Mode_14 ("Overlapped Exposure / Readout Mode") .....               | 54 |
| 5.5.6.7 Trigger_Mode_15 ("Multi-Shot Trigger Mode") .....                          | 55 |
| 5.5.7 Example: Asynchronous Hardware Triggering (Using the Camera Registers) ..... | 55 |
| 5.5.8 Example: Asynchronous Hardware Triggering (Using the FlyCapture API) .....   | 57 |
| 5.5.9 Asynchronous Software Triggering .....                                       | 58 |
| 5.5.10 Asynchronous Trigger Registers .....  | 59 |
| 5.6 External Device Control .....  | 61 |
| 5.6.1 Programmable Strobe Output .....   | 61 |
| 5.6.1.1 Example: Setting a GPIO Pin to Strobe (Using the Camera Registers) .....   | 62 |
| 5.6.1.2 Example: Setting a GPIO Pin to Strobe (Using the FlyCapture API) .....     | 64 |
| 5.6.1.3 Example: Setting GPIO Pins to Output a Strobe Pattern .....                | 65 |

|  |           |
|--|-----------|
| 5.6.1.4 Strobe Signal Output Registers.....                        | 68        |
| 5.6.2 Serial Communication Using GPIO.....                         | 71        |
| 5.6.2.1 SIO Buffers.....   | 71        |
| 5.6.2.2 Serial Output Transaction (Transmitting Data).....         | 72        |
| 5.6.2.3 Serial Input Transaction (Receiving Data).....             | 73        |
| 5.6.2.4 Transmitting and Receiving Data Simultaneously.....        | 75        |
| 5.6.2.5 SIO Control and Inquiry Registers.....                     | 75        |
| 5.6.3 Pulse Width Modulation (PWM).....                            | 78        |
| 5.7 On-Camera Frame Buffer.....                                    | 82        |
| 5.7.1 Retransmitting an Image in External Trigger Mode.....        | 84        |
| 5.7.2 Storing images for later transmission.....                   | 85        |
| 5.8 Test Pattern.....  | 86        |
| <b>6 Imaging Parameters and Control.....</b>                       | <b>87</b> |
| 6.1 Brightness.....  | 87        |
| 6.1.1 Example: Setting Brightness Using the FlyCapture API.....    | 87        |
| 6.2 Shutter.....   | 88        |
| 6.2.1 Extended Shutter Times.....                                  | 89        |
| 6.2.2 Example: Setting Shutter Using the FlyCapture API.....       | 91        |
| 6.3 Gain.....  | 91        |
| 6.3.1 Example: Setting Gain Using the FlyCapture API.....          | 92        |
| 6.4 Auto Exposure.....   | 92        |
| 6.4.1 Example Setting Auto Exposure Using the FlyCapture2 API..... | 95        |
| 6.5 Gamma and Lookup Table.....                                    | 96        |
| 6.5.1 Example: Setting Gamma Using the FlyCapture API.....         | 101       |
| 6.6 Saturation.....  | 101       |
| 6.6.1 Example: Setting Saturation Using the FlyCapture API.....    | 102       |
| 6.7 Hue.....   | 102       |
| 6.7.1 Example: Setting Hue Using the FlyCapture API.....           | 103       |
| 6.8 Sharpness.....   | 103       |

|  |            |
|--|------------|
| 6.8.1 Example: Setting Sharpness Using the FlyCapture API.....               | 104        |
| 6.9 White Balance.....   | 104        |
| 6.9.1 Example: Setting White Balance Using the FlyCapture API.....           | 106        |
| 6.10 Bayer Color Processing.....   | 107        |
| 6.10.1 Accessing Raw Bayer Data.....   | 107        |
| 6.11 Image Flip / Mirror.....  | 109        |
| 6.12 Embedded Image Information.....   | 109        |
| 6.13 Pixel Defect Correction.....  | 111        |
| <b>7 Camera Mechanical Properties.....</b>                                   | <b>113</b> |
| 7.1 Physical Description.....  | 113        |
| 7.2 Camera Dimensions.....   | 113        |
| 7.3 Tripod Adapter Dimensions.....   | 115        |
| 7.4 Lens Mount Dimensions.....   | 115        |
| 7.5 Dust Protection.....   | 116        |
| 7.6 Mounting.....  | 117        |
| 7.6.1 Using the Case.....  | 117        |
| 7.6.2 Using the Tripod Adapter.....  | 117        |
| 7.7 Infrared Cut-Off Filters.....  | 117        |
| <b>8 Troubleshooting and Support.....</b>                                    | <b>119</b> |
| 8.1 Technical Support Resources.....   | 119        |
| 8.1.1 Status Indicator LED.....  | 120        |
| 8.2 Common Image Sensor Artifacts.....                                       | 120        |
| 8.3 Error Status Registers.....  | 121        |
| <b>Appendix A: General Register Information.....</b>                         | <b>123</b> |
| <b>Appendix B: Inquiry Registers.....</b>                                    | <b>127</b> |
| <b>Appendix C: Video Mode Control and Status Registers for Format_7.....</b> | <b>144</b> |
| <b>Appendix D: Absolute Value Registers.....</b>                             | <b>151</b> |
| <b>Appendix E: Isochronous Packet Format.....</b>                            | <b>156</b> |
| <b>Appendix F: Glossary.....</b>   | <b>160</b> |

|   |            |
|---|------------|
| <b>Appendix G: Contacting Point Grey Research</b> ..... | <b>163</b> |
| <b>Appendix H: Revision History</b> .....               | <b>164</b> |
| <b>Index</b> .....                                      | <b>165</b> |

## List of Tables

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Table 2.1: CSR Mode Control Descriptions.....  | 17  |
| Table 2.2: Status indicator LED descriptions.....  | 21  |
| Table 3.1: IEEE-1394b connector pin configuration.....                                     | 29  |
| Table 3.2: GPIO pin assignments (as shown looking at rear of camera).....                  | 30  |
| Table 4.1: Supported video formats, modes and frame rates (GS2-FW-14S5).....               | 40  |
| Table 4.2: Supported partial image (Format 7) video formats and modes for GS2-FW-14S5..... | 42  |
| Table 8.1: Status indicator LED descriptions.....  | 120 |
| Table C.1: Format_7 Inquiry Register Offset Addresses.....                                 | 144 |
| Table E.1: Isochronous Data Packet Format for Format_0, Format_1 and Format_2.....         | 156 |
| Table E.2: Isochronous Data Packet Format for Format_7.....                                | 158 |

## List of Figures

|  |    |
|--|----|
| Figure 3.1: IEEE-1394b connector pin configuration (as shown looking at the rear of the camera)..... | 29 |
| Figure 3.2: Optical input circuit.....   | 31 |
| Figure 3.3: Optical output circuit.....  | 32 |
| Figure 3.4: Figure 4: GPIO2 / 3 Circuit.....   | 33 |
| Figure 4.1: 2x Vertical and 2x Horizontal Binning.....   | 36 |
| Figure 5.1: External trigger timing characteristics.....   | 49 |
| Figure 5.2: Relationship Between External Triggering and Video Mode Change Request.....              | 51 |
| Figure 5.3: Trigger_Mode_0 ("Standard External Trigger Mode").....                                   | 52 |
| Figure 5.4: Trigger_Mode_1 ("Bulb Shutter Mode").....  | 52 |
| Figure 5.5: Trigger_Mode_3 ("Skip Frames Mode").....   | 53 |
| Figure 5.6: Trigger_Mode_4 ("Multiple Exposure Preset Mode").....                                    | 53 |



|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Figure 5.7: Trigger_Mode_5 ("Multiple Exposure Pulse Width Mode").....      | 54  |
| Figure 5.8: Trigger_Mode_14 ("Overlapped Exposure / Readout Mode").....     | 54  |
| Figure 5.9: Trigger_Mode_15 ("Multi-Shot Trigger Mode").....                | 55  |
| Figure 5.10: Software trigger timing.....                                   | 58  |
| Figure 5.11: Example of multiple camera strobe pattern synchronization..... | 65  |
| Figure 5.12: Test pattern sample image.....                                 | 86  |
| Figure 6.1: Example Bayer tile pattern.....                                 | 107 |
| Figure 7.1: Camera Dimensional Diagram.....                                 | 114 |
| Figure 7.2: Tripod Adapter Dimensional Diagram.....                         | 115 |
| Figure 7.3: IR filter transmittance graph.....                              | 117 |

# 1 Introduction

The fully redesigned Grasshopper2 camera is the next generation version of the high performance Grasshopper. With a selection of the same image sensors and housed in the same form factor as the Grasshopper, the Grasshopper2 offers several new features, including enhanced opto-isolated GPIO and improved imaging performance.



*All model-specific information presented in this manual reflects functionality available in firmware version 1.6.3.0.*

*To check the camera firmware version, consult our knowledge base:  
[www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=94](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=94).*

## Related Knowledge Base Articles

| ID  | Title  | URL  |
|-----|--|--|
| 206 | Key features and benefits of the IEEE-1394b standard | <a href="http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=206">www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=206</a> |

## 1.1 Using This Manual

This manual provides the user with a detailed specification of the camera system. The reader should be aware that the camera system is complex and dynamic – if any errors or omissions are found during experimentation, please contact us. (See Appendix G: Contacting Point Grey Research on page 163.)

This document is subject to change without notice.

## 1.2 GS2-FW-14S5 Specifications

### 1.2.1 General Features and Specifications

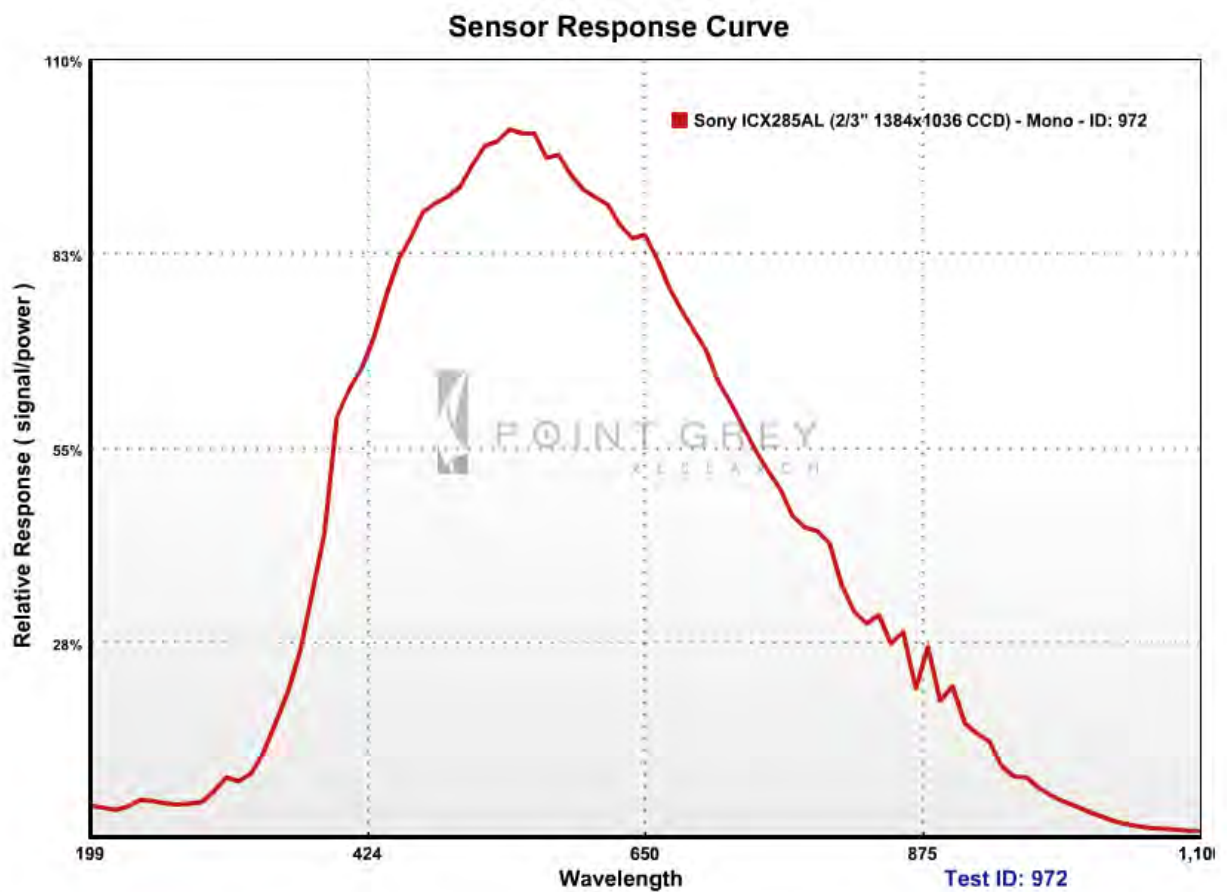
|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <b>Imaging Sensor</b>            | Sony® ICX 285 2/3" progressive scan CCD   |
| <b>Max Pixels</b>                | 1384 x 1036   |
| <b>Pixel Size</b>                | 6.45 $\mu\text{m}$ x 6.45 $\mu\text{m}$   |
| <b>Pixel Clock Frequency</b>     | 28 MHz maximum  |
| <b>A/D Converter</b>             | 14-bit  |
| <b>Max FPS at Max Resolution</b> | 30 FPS  |
| <b>Video Data Output</b>         | 8, 12, 16 and 24-bit digital data   |
| <b>Partial Image Modes</b>       | Pixel binning and region of interest modes available via Format_7   |
| <b>Gain</b>                      | Automatic/Manual/One-Push Gain modes  |
|                                  | -3.6 dB to 24 dB  |
| <b>Shutter</b>                   | Automatic/Manual/One-Push/Extended Shutter modes  |
|                                  | 0.03 ms to 330 seconds (extended shutter mode)  |
| <b>Gamma</b>                     | 0.50 to 4.00  |
| <b>Full Well Depth*</b>          | 19,845 e <sup>-</sup> at zero gain  |
| <b>Signal To Noise Ratio*</b>    | 64 dB   |
| <b>Dark Noise*</b>               | 10.79 e <sup>-</sup> /s at zero gain  |
| <b>Dark Current*</b>             | 204 e <sup>-</sup> /s at zero gain  |
| <b>Read Noise*</b>               | 12.06 e <sup>-</sup> at zero gain   |
| <b>Trigger Modes</b>             | IIDC Trigger Modes 0, 1, 3, 4, 5, 14 and 15   |
| <b>Lens Mount</b>                | C-mount   |
| <b>Interfaces</b>                | 9-pin IEEE-1394b for camera control and video data transmission<br>8-pin HR25 female GPIO for power, trigger and strobe |
| <b>Camera Specification</b>      | IIDC 1394-based Digital Camera Specification v1.32  |
| <b>Power Requirements</b>        | Voltage: 8-30 V Power: less than 2.5 W  |
| <b>Dimensions</b>                | 44 mm x 29 mm x 58 mm (without optics)  |
| <b>Mass</b>                      | 104 grams (without optics)  |
| <b>Emissions Compliance</b>      | Complies with CE rules and Part 15 Class A of FCC Rules   |

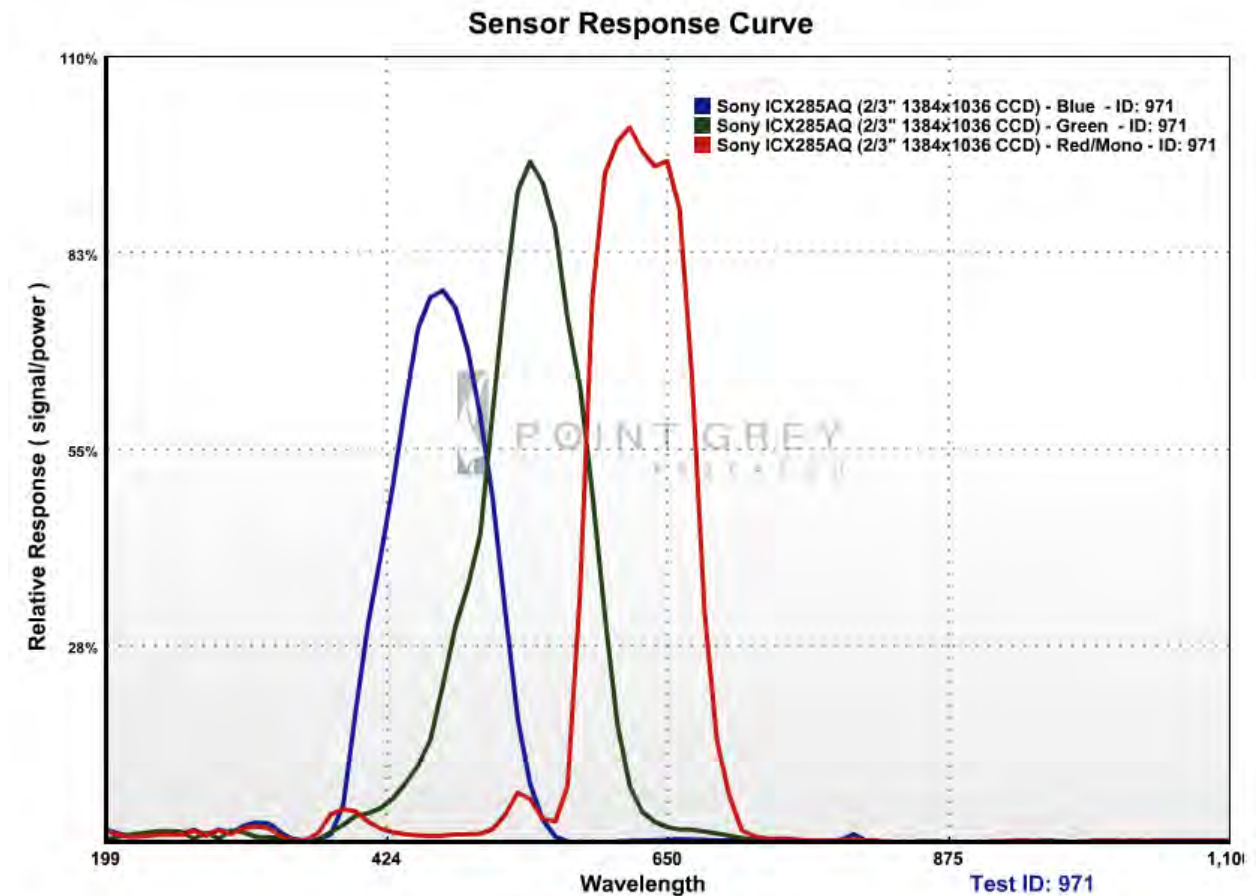
\*Based on Format\_7 Mode\_0, Mono16 pixel format, max resolution, 0 dB gain, 1.0 ms exposure.

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <b>Operating Temperature</b>       | Commercial grade electronics rated from 0° to 45°C |
| <b>Operating Relative Humidity</b> | 20 to 80% (no condensation)                        |
| <b>Storage Temperature</b>         | -30° to 60°C                                       |
| <b>Storage Relative Humidity</b>   | 20 to 95% (no condensation)                        |
| <b>Warranty</b>                    | Two years  |

## 1.2.2 GS2-FW-14S5 Sensor Response

### GS2-FW-14S5 (Mono)



**GS2-FW-14S5 (Color)**

## 1.3 Analog-to-Digital Conversion

The camera sensor incorporates an Analog Devices A/D converter to digitize the images produced by the CCD. The 14-bit conversion produces 16,384 possible digital image values between 0 and 65,520. Across a 2-byte data format, the two unused bits are padded with zeros. The two right-most bits are always zero. The following table illustrates the most important aspects of the processor. For more information, refer to the Analog Devices website at [www.analog.com](http://www.analog.com).

|                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <b>Resolution</b>              | 14-bit, 65 MHz                 |
| <b>Pixel Gain Amplifier</b>    | -3 dB to 6 dB, 3 dB steps      |
| <b>Variable Gain Amplifier</b> | 6 dB to 42 dB, 10-bit          |
| <b>Black Level Clamp</b>       | 0 LSB to 1023 LSB, 1 LSB steps |

## 2 General Camera Operation

### 2.1 Handling Precautions and Camera Care



*Do not open the camera housing. Doing so voids the Hardware Warranty described at the beginning of this reference manual.*

Your Point Grey digital camera module is a precisely manufactured device and should be handled with care. Here are some tips on how to care for the device.

- Avoid electrostatic charging. Please consult the following knowledge base article for more details: [www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=42](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=42).
- Users who have purchased a bare board camera should take the following additional protective measures:
  - Either handle bare handed or use non-chargeable gloves, clothes or material. Also, use conductive shoes.
  - Install a conductive mat on the floor or working table to prevent the generation of static electricity.
- When handling the camera unit, avoid touching the lenses. Fingerprints will affect the quality of the image produced by the device.
- To clean the lenses, use a standard camera lens cleaning kit or a clean dry cotton cloth. Do not apply excessive force.
- To clean the imaging surface of your sensor, follow the steps outlined in [www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=66](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=66).
- Our cameras are designed for an office environment or laboratory use. Extended exposure to bright sunlight, rain, dusty environments, etc. may cause problems with the electronics and the optics of the system.
- Avoid excessive shaking, dropping or any kind of mishandling of the device.

#### 2.1.1 Case Temperature and Heat Dissipation

As a result of packing the camera electronics into a small space, the outer case of the camera can become very warm to the touch when running in some high data rate video modes. The case can reach temperatures up to 45° Celsius under normal operating conditions. This is expected behavior and will not damage the camera electronics.

If reducing heat is a concern, users can use a cooling fan to set up a positive air flow around the camera, taking into consideration the following precautions:

- Mount the camera on a heat sink, such as a camera mounting bracket, made out of a heat-conductive material like aluminum.
- Make sure the flow of heat from the camera case to the bracket is not blocked by a non-conductive material like plastic.
- Make sure the camera has enough open space around it to facilitate the free flow of air.

The camera is equipped with an on-board temperature sensor. It allows you to obtain the temperature of the camera board-level components. The sensor measures the ambient temperature within the case. This feature can be accessed using the TEMPERATURE register 82Ch ([page 1](#)).

**Temp. Sensor Specifications**

|            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| Accuracy   | 0.5° C           |
| Range      | -25° C to +85° C |
| Resolution | 12 bits          |

## 2.2 Powering the Camera

The 9-pin 1394 connector connects to a standard IEEE-1394 (FireWire) 9-pin cable and provides a power connection between the camera and the host computer. The ideal input voltage is 12V DC; however, the camera is designed to handle voltages between 8V and 30V DC. The power consumption is outlined in the Camera Specifications section.

Power can also be provided through the GPIO interface. For more information, see [General Purpose Input/Output \(GPIO\) on page 30](#). The camera selects whichever power source is supplying a higher voltage.

Some systems - such as laptop computers or those with several FireWire devices connected - require an external power supply to power the camera. For suggestions on how to provide power in these circumstances, consult the following knowledge base article:

KB Article 93: [www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=93](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=93)

Components of the camera can be powered-up or powered-down using the CAMERA\_POWER register 0x610. The exact components, such as image sensor, A/D converter and other board electronics, vary between camera models. By default, power is OFF both at startup and reinitialization.

If isochronous transmit (ISO\_EN ([page 45](#))/ ONE\_SHOT / MULTI\_SHOT ([page 45](#)) ) is enabled while the camera is powered down, the camera will automatically write *Cam\_Pwr\_Ctrl* = 1 to power itself up. However, disabling isochronous transmission does not automatically power-down the camera.

The camera does not transmit images for the first 100 ms after power-up. The auto-exposure and auto-white balance algorithms do not run while the camera is powered down. It may therefore take several (*n*) images to get a satisfactory image, where *n* is undefined.

When the camera is power cycled (power disengaged then re-engaged), the camera will revert to its default factory settings, or if applicable, the last saved memory channel. For more information, see [User Configuration Sets on page 18](#).

**CAMERA\_POWER: 610h****Format:**

| Field               | Bit    | Description   |
|---------------------|--------|---|
| Cam_Pwr_Ctrl        | [0]    | Write:<br>0: Begin power-down process<br>1: Begin power-up process<br>Read:<br>0: Camera is powered down, or in the process of powering up i.e., bit will be zero until camera completely powered up (outside IIDC specification).<br>1: Camera is powered up |
|                     | [1-30] | Reserved  |
| Camera_Power_Status | [31]   | Read only<br>Read: the pending value of Cam_Pwr_Ctrl  |

## 2.3 Managing Camera Settings

### 2.3.1 Using the Control and Status Registers

The user can monitor or control each feature of the camera through the control and status registers (CSRs) programmed into the camera firmware. These registers conform to the IIDC 1394-based Digital Camera Specification v1.32. *Format* tables for each 32-bit register are presented along with their respective feature descriptions throughout this manual. These tables describe the purpose of each bit that comprises the register. Bit 0 is always the most significant bit of the register value.

Register offsets and values are generally referred to in their hexadecimal forms, represented by either a '0x' before the number or 'h' after the number, e.g. the decimal number 255 can be represented as 0xFF or FFh.



For more information about camera registers, including the base register memory map, config ROM offsets and calculating register addresses, see [General Register Information on page 123](#)

The controllable fields of most registers are *Mode* and *Value*.

**Mode:**

Each CSR has three bits for mode control, ON\_OFF, One\_Push and A\_M\_Mode (Auto/Manual mode). Each feature can have four states corresponding to the combination of mode control bits.



Not all features implement all modes.

| One_Push | ON_OFF | A_M_Mode | State             |
|----------|--------|----------|-------------------|
| N/A      | 0      | N/A      | <b>Off state.</b> |



| One_Push | ON_OFF | A_M_Mode | State   |
|----------|--------|----------|---|
|          |        |          | Feature will be fixed value state and uncontrollable.   |
| N/A      | 1      | 1        | <b>Auto control state.</b><br>Camera controls feature by itself continuously.   |
| 0        | 1      | 0        | <b>Manual control state.</b><br>User can control feature by writing value to the value field.                                       |
| 1        | 1      | 0        | <b>One-Push action.</b><br>Camera controls feature by itself only once and returns to the Manual control state with adjusted value. |

Table 2.1: CSR Mode Control Descriptions

**Value:**

If the *Presence\_Inq* bit of the register is one, the *value* field is valid and can be used for controlling the feature. The user can write control values to the *value* field only in the **Manual control state**. In the other states, the user can only read the *value*. The camera always has to show the real setting value at the *value* field if *Presence\_Inq* is one.

**2.3.1.1 Using the Inquiry Registers**

The camera provides a series of inquiry registers, which allow you to reference basic information about camera features. For information about the following inquiry registers, see [Inquiry Registers on page 127](#):

- *Inquiry Registers for Basic Functions and Feature Presence*: To determine if a particular function or feature is available on the camera.
- *Inquiry Registers for Feature Elements*: To determine if elements of a particular feature are available on the camera.
- *Video Format, Mode and Frame Rate Inquiry Registers*: To determine which standard video format, modes and frame rates are available on the camera.

The following additional inquiry registers are also available:

- *Inquiry Registers for Format\_7 Video Modes* ([page 144](#))
- *Inquiry Registers for Serial I/O* ([page 75](#))
- *Inquiry Registers for Lookup Table Functionality* ([page 97](#))

**2.3.1.2 Using the Absolute Value Registers**

Many Point Grey IEEE-1394 cameras implement “absolute” modes for various camera settings that report real-world values, such as shutter time in seconds (s) and gain value in decibels (dB). Using these absolute values is easier and more efficient than applying complex conversion formulas to the information in the *Value* field of the associated Control and Status Register. A relative value does not always translate to the same absolute value. Two properties that can affect this relationship are pixel clock frequency and horizontal line frequency. These properties are, in turn, affected by such properties as resolution, frame rate, region of interest (ROI) size and position, and packet size. Additionally, conversion formulas can change between firmware versions. Point Grey therefore recommends using absolute value registers, where possible, to determine camera values.

For more information, see [Absolute Value Registers on page 151](#).

## 2.3.2 Operating System and Software Support

### 2.3.2.1 Macintosh and Linux OS Support

Users wishing to operate their Point Grey camera on the Macintosh OS/X or Linux operating systems should consult the following knowledge base articles:

Macintosh support:

[www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=173](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=173)

Linux support:

[www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=330](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=330)

[www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=17](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=17)

### 2.3.2.2 FlyCap Demo Program

The FlyCap application is a generic, easy-to-use streaming image viewer included with the FlyCapture® SDK that can be used to test many of the capabilities of your compatible Point Grey camera. It allows you to view a live video stream from the camera, save individual images, adjust the various video formats, frame rates, properties and settings of the camera, and access camera registers directly. Consult the FlyCapture SDK Help for more information.

### 2.3.2.3 Custom Applications Built with the FlyCapture API

The FlyCapture SDK includes a full Application Programming Interface that allows customers to create custom applications to control Point Grey Imaging Products. Included with the SDK are a number of source code examples to help programmers get started.

#### Third-Party Software Applications

The following knowledge base article provides information on Point Grey IEEE-1394 camera compatibility with third-party software development kits, applications, camera drivers, and integrated development environments (IDEs):

KB Article 152: [www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=152](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=152)

## 2.3.3 User Configuration Sets

The camera can save and restore settings and imaging parameters via on-board configuration sets, also known as memory channels. This is useful for saving default power-up settings, such as gain, shutter, video format and frame rate, and others that are different from the factory defaults.

Memory channel 0 is used for the default factory settings that users can always restore to. Two additional memory channels are provided for custom default settings. The camera will initialize itself at power-up, or when explicitly reinitialized, using the contents of the last saved memory channel. Attempting to save user settings to the (read-only) factory defaults channel will cause the camera to switch back to using the factory defaults during initialization.

For a listing of all registers saved, see [Memory Channel Registers on next page](#).

**MEMORY\_SAVE: 618h****Format:**

| Field       | Bit    | Description  |
|-------------|--------|--|
| Memory_Save | [0]    | 1 = Current status and modes are saved to MEM_SAVE_CH (Self cleared) |
|             | [1-31] | Reserved.  |

**MEM\_SAVE\_CH: 620h****Format:**

| Field       | Bit    | Description   |
|-------------|--------|---|
| Mem_Save_Ch | [0-3]  | Write channel for Memory_Save command. Shall be >=0001 (0 is for factory default settings) See BASIC_FUNC_INQ register. |
|             | [4-31] | Reserved.   |

**CUR\_MEM\_CH: 624h****Format:**

| Field      | Bit    | Description   |
|------------|--------|---|
| Cur_Mem_Ch | [0-3]  | Write: Loads the camera status, modes and values from the specified memory channel.<br>Read: The current memory channel number. |
|            | [4-31] | Reserved.   |

**2.3.3.1 Memory Channel Registers**

The values of the following registers are saved in memory channels.

| Register Name        | Offset |
|----------------------|--------|
| CURRENT_FRAME_RATE   | 600h   |
| CURRENT_VIDEO_MODE   | 604h   |
| CURRENT_VIDEO_FORMAT | 608h   |
| CAMERA_POWER         | 610h   |
| CUR_SAVE_CH          | 620h   |
| BRIGHTNESS           | 800h   |
| AUTO_EXPOSURE        | 804h   |
| SHARPNESS            | 808h   |

| Register Name         | Offset                        |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|
| WHITE_BALANCE         | 80Ch                          |
| HUE                   | 810h                          |
| SATURATION            | 814h                          |
| GAMMA                 | 818h                          |
| SHUTTER               | 81Ch                          |
| GAIN                  | 820h                          |
| IRIS                  | 824h                          |
| FOCUS                 | 828h                          |
| TRIGGER_MODE          | 830h                          |
| TRIGGER_DELAY         | 834h                          |
| FRAME_RATE            | 83Ch                          |
| PAN                   | 884h                          |
| TILT                  | 888h                          |
| ABS_VAL_AUTO_EXPOSURE | 908h                          |
| ABS_VAL_SHUTTER       | 918h                          |
| ABS_VAL_GAIN          | 928h                          |
| ABS_VAL_BRIGHTNESS    | 938h                          |
| ABS_VAL_GAMMA         | 948h                          |
| ABS_VAL_TRIGGER_DELAY | 958h                          |
| ABS_VAL_FRAME_RATE    | 968h                          |
| IMAGE_DATA_FORMAT     | 1048h                         |
| AUTO_EXPOSURE_RANGE   | 1088h                         |
| AUTO_SHUTTER_RANGE    | 1098h                         |
| AUTO_GAIN_RANGE       | 10A0h                         |
| GPIO_XTRA             | 1104h                         |
| SHUTTER_DELAY         | 1108h                         |
| GPIO_STRPAT_CTRL      | 110Ch                         |
| GPIO_CTRL_PIN_x       | 1110h, 1120h, 1130h,<br>1140h |
| GPIO_XTRA_PIN_x       | 1114h, 1124h, 1134h,<br>1144h |

| Register Name            | Offset                     |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| GPIO_STRPAT_MASK_PIN_x   | 1118h, 1128h, 1138h, 1148h |
| FRAME_INFO               | 12F8h                      |
| FORMAT_7_IMAGE_POSITION  | 008h                       |
| FORMAT_7_IMAGE_SIZE      | 00Ch                       |
| FORMAT_7_COLOR_CODING_ID | 010h                       |
| FORMAT_7_BYTE_PER_PACKET | 044h                       |

## 2.4 Camera Error and Status Monitoring

### 2.4.1 Status Indicator LED

| LED Status                       | Description   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Maximum red (Initial connection) | Initial startup. On until camera is initialized.  |
| Maximum red (During operation)   | Condition 1: Bus Rest. On for 0.66s.<br>Condition 2: Power failure. On until power-up via CAMERA_POWER 0x610 ( <a href="#">page 16</a> ). |
| Dull Red                         | Configuration error.  |
| Bright Red                       | Configuration error.  |
| Dull Green                       | Camera is idle.   |
| Bright Green                     | Firewire activity. On for 0.5s during activity.   |
| Dull Yellow                      | Powered down.   |
| Bright Yellow                    | Powered down + activity. On for 0.5s during activity.   |
| Red/Green flashing               | Camera firmware is being updated. Flashes at 5Hz.   |

**Table 2.2: Status indicator LED descriptions**

#### LED\_CTRL: 1A14h

This register allows the user to turn off the camera's status LED. LED(s) are re-enabled the next time the camera is power cycled.

**Format:**

| Field        | Bit     | Description                                      |
|--------------|---------|--|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available  |
|              | [1-22]  | Reserved   |
| LED_Ctrl     | [23-31] | Enable or disable the LED<br>0x00: Off, 0x74: On |

## 2.4.2 General Status Monitoring

### INITIALIZE: 000h

**Format:**

| Offset | Name       | Field      | Bit    | Description   |
|--------|------------|------------|--------|---|
| 000h   | INITIALIZE | Initialize | [0]    | If this bit is set to 1, the camera will reset to its initial state and default settings. This bit is self-cleared. |
|        |            | -          | [1-31] | Reserved  |

### TIME FROM INITIALIZE: 12E0h

This register reports the time, in seconds, since the camera (FPGA) was initialized. This initialization occurs during a hard power-up. This is different from powering up the camera via the CAMERA\_POWER ([page 16](#)) register, which will not reset this time.

**Format:**

| Field          | Bit    | Description                                       |
|----------------|--------|---|
| Presence_Inq   | [0]    | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available   |
| Time_From_Init | [1-31] | Time in seconds since the camera was initialized. |

### TIME FROM BUS RESET: 12E4h

This register reports the time, in seconds, since the last bus reset occurred. This will be equal to the value reported by TIME\_FROM\_INITIALIZE ([page 22](#)) if no reset has occurred since the last time the camera was initialized.

**Format:**

| Field           | Bit    | Description   |
|-----------------|--------|---|
| Presence_Inq    | [0]    | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available         |
| Time_From_Reset | [1-31] | Time in seconds since the camera detected a bus reset . |

### VOLTAGE: 1A50h – 1A54h

This register allows the user to access and monitor the various voltage registers supported by the camera.

**Format:**

| Offset | Name           | Field        | Bit     | Description  |
|--------|----------------|--------------|---------|--|
| 1A50h  | VOLTAGE_LO_INQ | Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: Not available, 1: Available   |
|        |                | -            | [1-7]   | Reserved   |
|        |                |              | [8-19]  | Number of voltage registers supported  |
|        |                | -            | [20-31] | Reserved   |
| 1A54h  | VOLTAGE_HI_INQ |              | [0-31]  | Quadlet offset of the voltage CSR's, which report the current voltage in Volts using the 32-bit floating-point IEEE/REAL*4 format. |

**CURRENT: 1A58h-1A5Ch**

This register allows the user to access and monitor the various current registers supported by the camera.

**Format:**

| Offset | Name           | Field        | Bit     | Description   |
|--------|----------------|--------------|---------|---|
| 1A58h  | CURRENT_LO_INQ | Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: Not available, 1: Available  |
|        |                |              | [1-7]   | Reserved  |
|        |                |              | [8-19]  | Number of current registers supported   |
|        |                |              | [20-31] | Reserved  |
| 1A5Ch  | CURRENT_HI_INQ |              | [0-31]  | Quadlet offset of the current CSR's, which report the current in amps using the 32-bit floating-point IEEE/REAL*4 format. |

**TEMPERATURE: 82Ch**

Allows the user to get the temperature of the camera board-level components. For cameras housed in a case, it is the ambient temperature within the case. *Value* is in kelvins (0°C = 273.15K) in increments of one-tenth (0.1) of a kelvin.

For more information about camera temperature, see [Case Temperature and Heat Dissipation on page 14](#).

**Format:**

| Field        | Bit   | Description   |
|--------------|-------|---|
| Presence_Inq | [0]   | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A, 1: Available  |
| Abs_Control  | [1]   | Absolute value control<br>0: Control with the value in the Value field<br>1: Control with the value in the Absolute value CSR.<br>If this bit = 1, the value in the Value field is read-only. |
|              | [2-4] | Reserved  |

| Field    | Bit     | Description   |
|----------|---------|---|
| One_Push | [5]     | One push auto mode (controlled automatically by camera only once)<br>Write: 1: Begin to work (self-cleared after operation)<br>Read: 0: Not in operation, 1: In operation<br>If A_M_Mode = 1, this bit is ignored |
| ON_OFF   | [6]     | Write: ON or OFF for this feature<br>Read: read a status<br>0: OFF, 1: ON<br>If this bit = 0, other fields will be read only  |
| A_M_Mode | [7]     | Read: read a current mode<br>0: Manual, 1: Automatic  |
|          | [8-19]  | Reserved  |
| Value    | [20-31] | Value.<br>A write to this value in 'Auto' mode will be ignored.   |

### 2.4.3 Error Status Registers

#### XMIT\_FAILURE: 12FCh

This register contains a count of the number of failed frame transmissions that have occurred since the last reset. An error occurs if the camera cannot arbitrate for the bus to transmit image data and the image data FIFO overflows.

##### **Format:**

| Field        | Bit    | Description   |
|--------------|--------|---|
| Presence_Inq | [0]    | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available             |
| Frame_Count  | [1-31] | Read: Count of failed frame transmissions.<br>Write: Reset. |

#### VMODE\_ERROR\_STATUS: 628h

This register is used by the camera to report any camera configuration errors. If an error has occurred, no image data will be sent by the camera.

##### **Format:**

| Field              | Bit    | Description  |
|--------------------|--------|--|
| Vmode_Error_Status | [0]    | Error status of combination of video format, mode, frame rate and ISO_SPEED setting.<br>0: no error<br>1: error<br>This flag will be updated every time one of the above settings is changed by writing a new value. |
|                    | [1-31] | Reserved.  |



**CAMERA\_LOG: 1D00 – 1DFFh**

This register provides access to the camera's 256 byte internal message log, which is often useful for debugging camera problems. Characters are hexadecimal representations of ASCII characters. Contact technical support for interpretation of message logs.

**Format:**

| Offset     | Description   |
|------------|---|
| 1D00..1DFF | Each byte is the hexadecimal representation of an ASCII character. The log is in reverse byte order, with the latest entry at the beginning of the log. The most significant byte of address 1D00h is the last byte in the log. |

**2.4.4 Device Information****PIXEL\_CLOCK\_FREQ: 1AF0h**

This register specifies the current pixel clock frequency (in Hz) in IEEE-754 32-bit floating point format. The camera pixel clock defines an upper limit to the rate at which pixels can be read off the image sensor.

**Format:**

| Field            | Bit    | Description                              |
|------------------|--------|--|
| Pixel_Clock_Freq | [0-31] | Pixel clock frequency in Hz (read-only). |

**HORIZONTAL\_LINE\_FREQ: 1AF4h**

This register specifies the current horizontal line frequency in Hz in IEEE-754 32-bit floating point format.

**Format:**

| Field                | Bit    | Description                                  |
|----------------------|--------|--|
| Horizontal_Line_Freq | [0-31] | Horizontal line frequency in Hz (read-only). |

**SERIAL\_NUMBER: 1F20h**

This register specifies the unique serial number of the camera.

**Format:**

| Field         | Bit    | Description                                |
|---------------|--------|--|
| Serial_Number | [0-31] | Unique serial number of camera (read-only) |

**MAIN\_BOARD\_INFO: 1F24h**

This register specifies the type of camera (according to the main printed circuit board).

**Format:**

| Field              | Bit     | Description  |
|--------------------|---------|--|
| Major_Board_Design | [0-11]  | 0x2: Digiclops<br>0x3: Dragonfly<br>0x4: Sync Unit<br>0x6: Ladybug Head<br>0x7: Ladybug Base Unit<br>0x8: Bumblebee<br>0xA: Scorpion Back Board<br>0x10: Flea<br>0x12: Dragonfly Express<br>0x18: Dragonfly2<br>0x19: Flea2<br>0x1A: Firefly MV<br>0x1C: Bumblebee2<br>0x1F: Grasshopper<br>0x22: Grasshopper2<br>0x21: Flea2G-13S2<br>0x24: Flea2G-50S5<br>0x26: Chameleon<br>0x2B: Flea3<br>0x36: Zebra2 |
| Minor_Board_Rev    | [12-15] | Internal use   |
| Reserved           | [16-31] | Reserved   |

**SENSOR\_BOARD\_INFO: 1F28h**

This register specifies the type of imaging sensor used by the camera (due to the wide variety of sensors available).



*The interpretation of this register varies depending on the camera type, as defined in the MAIN\_BOARD\_INFO register 0x1F24 (page 25) Read MAIN\_BOARD\_INFO to determine how to use the Sensor\_Type\_x fields.*

**Format:**

| Field           | Bit     | Description  |
|-----------------|---------|--------------|
| Sensor_Type_1   | [0-11]  | tbd          |
| Minor_Board_Rev | [12-15] | Internal use |
| Reserved        | [16-27] | Reserved     |
| Sensor_Type_2   | [28-31] | tbd          |

**BUILD\_TIMESTAMP: 1F40h**

This register specifies the date that the current version of the firmware was built in Unix time format.

**Format:**

| Field      | Bit    | Description                         |
|------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| Build_Date | [0-31] | Date firmware was built (read-only) |

**FIRMWARE\_VERSION: 1F60h**

This register contains the version information for the currently loaded camera firmware. For more information on Point Grey versioning standards, see Knowledge Base Article 96 (<http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=96>).

**Format:**

| Field    | Bit     | Description  |
|----------|---------|--|
| Major    | [0-7]   | Major revision number  |
| Minor    | [8-15]  | Minor revision number  |
| Type     | [16-19] | Type of release<br>0: Alpha<br>1: Beta<br>2: Release Candidate<br>3: Release |
| Revision | [20-31] | Revision number  |

**FIRMWARE\_BUILD\_DATE: 1F64h**

Specifies the date that the current version of the firmware was built in Unix time format.

**Format:**

| Field      | Bit    | Description                         |
|------------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| Build_Date | [0-31] | Date firmware was built (read-only) |

**FIRMWARE\_DESCRIPTION: 1F68-1F7Ch**

Null padded, big-endian string describing the currently loaded version of firmware.

## 2.5 Non-Volatile Flash Memory

The camera has 512 KB of non-volatile memory for users to store data.

**DATA\_FLASH\_CTRL: 1240h**

This register controls access to the camera's on-board flash memory. Each bit in the data flash is initially set to 1.

**Format:**

| Field        | Bit     | Description  |
|--------------|---------|--|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available  |
|              | [1-5]   | Reserved   |
| Clean_Page   | [6]     | Write:<br>1: Write page to data flash<br>0: No-op<br>Read:<br>1: Page is clean<br>0: Page is dirty |
|              | [7]     | Reserved   |
| Page_Size    | [8-19]  | 8 == 256 byte page<br>9 == 512 byte page   |
| Num_Pages    | [20-31] | 11 == 2048 pages<br>13 == 8192 pages   |

### DATA\_FLASH\_DATA: 1244h

This register provides the quadlet offset to the start of the actual data contained in the flash memory (query DATA\_FLASH\_CTRL register 1240h ([page 27](#))).

Any access outside of a modified page will automatically cause the page to be rewritten to flash, i.e. the user can write as much information as necessary, then perform a single write to the DATA\_FLASH\_CTRL register 1240h.

**Format:**

| Field   | Bit    | Description                         |
|---------|--------|-------------------------------------|
| DF_Data | [0-31] | Quadlet offset to the start of data |

## 2.6 Upgrading Camera Firmware

Camera firmware can be upgraded or downgraded to later or earlier versions using the UpdatorGUI2 program that is bundled with every firmware version available from [www.ptgrey.com/support/downloads](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/downloads). The latest firmware versions often include significant bug fixes and feature enhancements. To determine the changes made in a specific firmware version, consult the Release Notes. For more information on updating camera firmware, consult the UpdatorGUI2 User Manual, included with the firmware bundle.

## 2.7 Camera Accessories

Accessories such as tripod mounts are available from Point Grey. Contact our Sales team at [sales@ptgrey.com](mailto:sales@ptgrey.com) for additional information. Links to digital camera accessories can be found in the following knowledge base article:

KB Article 131: [www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=131](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=131).

## 3 Camera Interface and Connectors

### 3.1 IEEE-1394b Connector

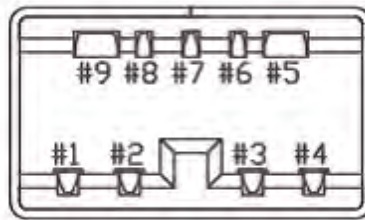
The camera has two standard 9-pin IEEE-1394b bilingual connectors (pin configuration shown below) for data transmission, camera control and powering the camera. Only one connector can be active at a time. For more detailed information, consult the IEEE-1394b Standard document available from [www.1394ta.org](http://www.1394ta.org).

For more information about powering the camera, see [Powering the Camera on page 15](#)

For a full description of the features and benefits of 1394b, refer to [Knowledge Base Article 206](#).



*While this camera is an IEEE-1394b device, it is backward compatible with the IEEE-1394a 400Mb/s standard, and can therefore be connected to any 1394a OHCI host adapter using a 9- to 6-pin cable.*



**Figure 3.1: IEEE-1394b connector pin configuration (as shown looking at the rear of the camera)**

| Pin | Signal Name | Comment                                  |
|-----|-------------|--|
| 1   | TPB-        | Twisted Pair B (Minus)                   |
| 2   | TPB+        | Twisted Pair B (Plus)                    |
| 3   | TPA-        | Twisted Pair A (Minus)                   |
| 4   | TPA+        | Twisted Pair A (Plus)                    |
| 5   | TPA (R)     | Twisted Pair A (Reference Ground)        |
| 6   | $V_G$       | Power (Ground)                           |
| 7   | SC          | Status Contact (Reserved for Future Use) |
| 8   | $V_P$       | Power (Voltage)                          |
| 9   | TPB (R)     | Twisted Pair B (Reference Ground)        |

**Table 3.1: IEEE-1394b connector pin configuration**

### 3.1.1 Daisy Chaining

As the camera has two (2) IEEE-1394b connectors, it is possible to connect multiple cameras (and/or hubs) in a daisy-chained manner. This configuration makes it easy to connect multiple cameras to a single host controller. However, the maximum bandwidth available for all cameras is still restricted to 800Mbps.

## 3.2 Cables

Standard, shielded twisted pair copper cables must be used for connections between 1394 nodes, such as from the camera to a PCI card, or a PCI card to a hub. To purchase IEEE-1394-compliant cables from Point Grey, visit <http://www.ptgrey.com/products/firepro/index.asp>.

Consult the following knowledge base article for information on how to extend the physical distance between the camera and the controlling host system:

KB Article 197: [www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=197](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=197)

## 3.3 Host Adapter Card

Camera kits include a 2-port IEEE-1394 PCI host adapter card or PCI Express Card. For more information regarding the differences between various 1394 host adapters, consult the following knowledge base article:

KB Article 146: [www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=146](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=146)

## 3.4 General Purpose Input/Output (GPIO)

The camera has an 8-pin GPIO connector on the back of the case. The connector is a Hirose HR25 8 pin connector (Mfg P/N: HR25-7TR-8SA); refer to the diagram below for wire color-coding. Male connectors (Mfg P/N: HR25-7TP-8P) can be purchased from Digikey (P/N: HR702-ND).


| Diagram   | Pin | Function  | Function  |
|---|-----|-----------|---|
|  | 1   | IO0       | Opto-isolated input (default Trigger in)              |
|   | 2   | IO1       | Opto-isolated output                                  |
|   | 3   | IO2       | Input / Output / serial transmit (TX)                 |
|   | 4   | IO3       | Input / Output / serial receive (RX)                  |
|   | 5   | GND       | Ground for bi-directional IO, $V_{EXT}$ , +3.3 V pins |
|   | 6   | GND       | Ground for opto-isolated IO pins                      |
|   | 7   | $V_{EXT}$ | Allows the camera to be powered externally            |
|   | 8   | +3.3 V    | Power external circuitry up to 150 mA                 |

Table 3.2: GPIO pin assignments (as shown looking at rear of camera)

**Inputs** can be configured to accept external trigger signals. Outputs can be configured to send an output signal. For information about I/O configuration, refer to the following sections:

- *Asynchronous External Trigger Modes*
- *Programmable Strobe Output*
- *Serial Communication Using GPIO*
- *Pulse Width Modulation (PWM)*

### 3.4.1 GPIO Electrical Characteristics

The GPIO pins are TTL 3.3V pins. When configured as **inputs**, the pins are internally pulled high using weak pull-up resistors to allow easy triggering of the camera by simply shorting the pin to ground (GND). Inputs can also be directly driven from a 3.3V or 5V logic output. The inputs are protected from both over and under voltage. It is recommended, however, that they only be connected to 5V or 3.3V digital logic signals. When configured as **outputs**, each line can sink 10mA of current. To drive external devices that require more, consult the following article for information on buffering an output signal using an optocoupler:

KB Article 200: [www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=200](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=200)

The  $V_{EXT}$  pin (Pin 7) allows the camera to be powered externally. The voltage limit is 8-30 V, and current is limited to 1A.

The **+3.3V** pin is fused at 150mA. External devices connected to Pin 8 should not attempt to pull anything greater than that.

### 3.4.2 GPIO0 (Opto-Isolated Input) Circuit

The figure below shows the schematic for the opto-isolated input circuit.

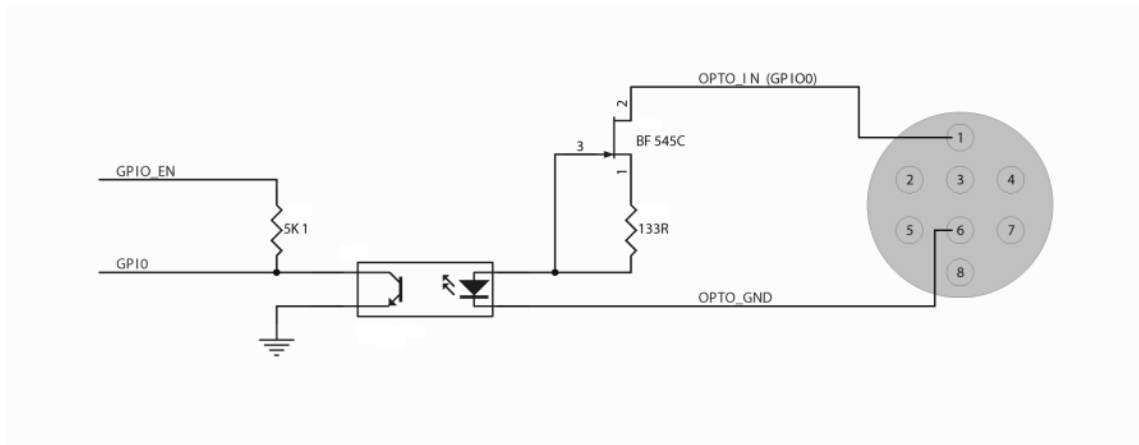
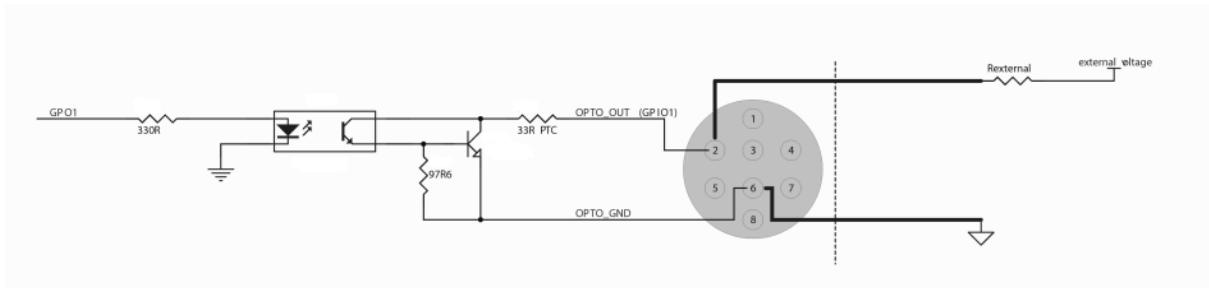


Figure 3.2: Optical input circuit

- *Logical 0 input voltage: 0 VDC to +1 VDC (voltage at OPTO\_IN)*
- *Logical 1 input voltage: +1.5 VDC to +30 VDC (voltage at OPTO\_IN)*
- *Maximum input current: 8.3 mA*
- *Behavior between 1 VDC and 1.5 VDC is undefined and input voltages between those values should be avoided*
- *Input delay time: 4  $\mu$ s*

### 3.4.3 GPIO1 (Opto-Isolated Output) Circuit

The figure below shows the schematic for the opto-isolated output circuit. The maximum current allowed through the opto-isolated output circuit is 25 mA.



**Figure 3.3: Optical output circuit**

The following table lists the switching times for the opto-isolator in the output pin, assuming an output VCC of 5 V and a 1 k $\Omega$  resistor.

| Parameter    | Value        |
|--------------|--------------|
| Delay Time   | 9 $\mu$ s    |
| Rise Time    | 16.8 $\mu$ s |
| Storage Time | 0.52 $\mu$ s |
| Fall Time    | 2.92 $\mu$ s |

The following table lists several external voltage and resistor combinations that have been tested to work with the opto-isolated output.

| External Voltage | External Resistor | OPTO_OUT Voltage | OPTO_OUT Current |
|------------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 3.3 V            | 1 k $\Omega$      | 0.56 V           | 2.7 mA           |
| 5 V              | 1 k $\Omega$      | 0.84 V           | 4.2 mA           |
| 12 V             | 2.4 k $\Omega$    | 0.91 V           | 4.6 mA           |
| 24 V             | 4.7 k $\Omega$    | 1.07 V           | 5.1 mA           |
| 30 V             | 4.7 k $\Omega$    | 1.51 V           | 13.3 mA          |



### 3.4.4 GPIO 2 / 3 (Bi-Directional) Circuit

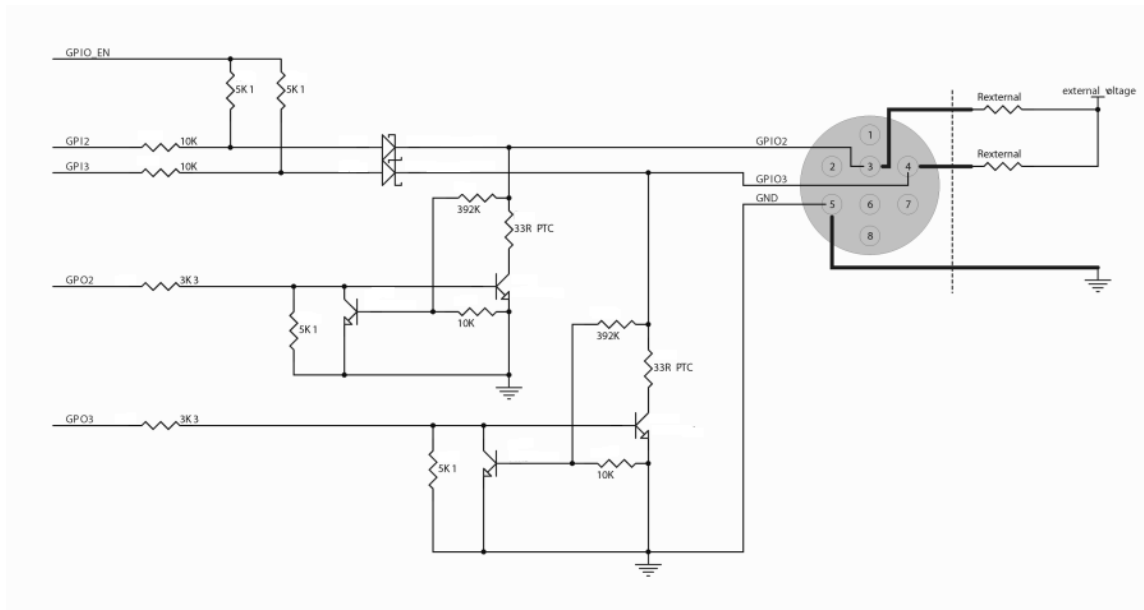


Figure 3.4: Figure 4: GPIO2 / 3 Circuit

#### 3.4.4.1 Input Side

- Logical 0 input voltage: 0 VDC to +0.5 VDC (voltage at GPIO2 / 3)
- Logical 1 input voltage: +1.5 VDC to +30 VDC (voltage at GPIO2 / 3)
- Behavior between 0.5 VDC and 1.5 VDC is undefined and input voltages between those values should be avoided



To avoid damage, connect the ground (GND) pin first before applying voltage to the GPIO line.

#### 3.4.4.2 Output Side

The maximum output current allowed through the bi-directional circuit is 25mA (limit by PTC resistor), and the output impedance is 40Ω.

The following table lists several external voltage and resistor combinations that have been tested to work with the bi-directional GPIO when configured as output.

| External Voltage | External Resistor ( $R_{\text{external}}$ ) | GPIO2/3 Voltage |
|------------------|---|-----------------|
| 3.3 V            | 1 kΩ  | 0.157 V         |
| 5 V              | 1 kΩ  | 0.218 V         |
| 12 V             | 1 kΩ  | 0.46 V          |
| 24 V             | 1 kΩ  | 0.86 V          |
| 30 V             | 1 kΩ  | 0.966 V         |

The following table lists the switching times for a standard GPIO pin, assuming an output VCC of 5V and a 1k $\Omega$  resistor.

| Parameter    | Value         |
|--------------|---------------|
| Delay Time   | 0.28 $\mu$ s  |
| Rise Time    | 0.06 $\mu$ s  |
| Storage Time | 0.03 $\mu$ s  |
| Fall Time    | 0.016 $\mu$ s |

## 4 Video Formats, Modes and Frame Rates

### 4.1 Frame Rates and Camera Bandwidth



*This section is recommended for advanced users only, and is not meant to address all possible applications of the camera.*

#### 4.1.1 Calculating Maximum Possible Frame Rate

The maximum frame rate allowable for each of the cameras on the bus depends on the resolution of the cameras and the frame rate, and can be roughly approximated using the following general formula (assuming all cameras are at the same resolution):

$$\text{Frames\_per\_second} = (\text{Bandwidth} / (\text{Pixels\_per\_frame} * \text{Bytes\_per\_pixel})) / \text{Num\_cameras}$$

**Example:**

To calculate the approximate frames per second available to three 1024x768 cameras in 16-bit mode, you would calculate:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Frames\_per\_second} &= (80 \text{ MB/s} / (1024 * 768 * 2 \text{ bytes/pixel})) / 3 \\ &= (80 \text{ MB/s} / 1.5 \text{ MB / frame}) / 3 \\ &= 53.33 \text{ FPS} / 3 \\ &= 17.8 \text{ FPS} \end{aligned}$$

The calculation above is only a rough estimate. The IIDC standard defines a specific number of bytes per packet (BPP) for every non-Format\_7 video format/mode/frame rate combination. This number is generally higher than the minimum bandwidth that might be expected. In order to accurately determine whether or not there is enough bandwidth available for a given scenario, these numbers must be used. To derive BPP, see [Isochronous Bandwidth Requirements on page 156](#).

For example, a single camera in 640x480 RGB mode running at 15 FPS is sending 640 pixels per packet. Each pixel consists of 24 bits, or 3 bytes, of data. Therefore, the camera is sending  $640 * 3 = 1920$ Bpp of data. The maximum bandwidth of the 1394b bus as discussed above is 8192Bpp, so it would be possible for  $8192/1920 = 4$  (rounded down) cameras to run in 640x480 RGB mode at 15 FPS on the same 1394b bus.

#### 4.1.2 Maximum Number of Cameras on a Single Bus

A single IEEE-1394 OHCI host adapter generally constitutes a single “bus”. There are four elements that limit the number of cameras that can be used on the same 1394 bus:

- Although the 1394b standard limits the maximum number of simultaneous isochronous channels to 16, there is currently no host adapter that is capable of supporting 16 channels. See

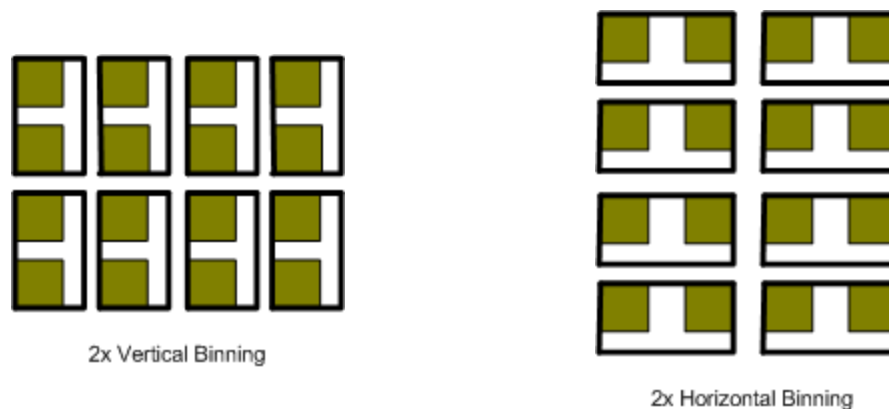
[Knowledge Base Article 146](#) for more information.

- The maximum bandwidth of the 1394b bus is 800Mbps/sec (10240Bytes/packet - 8000 cycles/sec). The usable bandwidth as defined by the 1394 Trade Association and enforced by the Microsoft Windows 1394 driver stack (1394bus.sys, ohci1394.sys, etc.) is approximately 80% or 80MBytes/sec (8192 bytes/packet). The remaining 20% of the bandwidth is allocated for asynchronous communication (e.g. register reads/writes). Outside of the Microsoft stack, it may be possible to allocate up to 9830 bytes/packet by using the Point Grey FirePRO driver stack.
- The 1394b standard limits the maximum number of devices on a single bus to 63.
- An inadequate power supply. Consult the voltage and power requirements in the *General Specifications* section to determine the amount of power required to operate the cameras effectively.

## 4.2 Custom Video Modes Using Format\_7

The camera implements a number of IIDC Format\_7 customizable video modes. These modes, which may allow for faster frame rate and/or increased intensity, operate by selecting a specific region of interest (ROI) of the image, or by configuring the camera to aggregate pixel values using a process known as "pixel binning" or "subsampling." Some modes implement a combination of ROI, binning and/or subsampling. On Point Grey cameras, "binning" refers to aggregation that takes place in an analog manner, directly on the sensor before read-out. "Subsampling" refers to aggregation that takes place digitally on the FPGA, after read-out. Unless specified otherwise, color data is maintained in pixel binning/subsampling modes.

The figures below illustrate how binning or subsampling work in general. 2x vertical binning aggregates two adjacent vertical pixel values to form a single pixel value. 2x horizontal binning works in the same manner, except two adjacent horizontal pixel values are aggregated.



**Figure 4.1: 2x Vertical and 2x Horizontal Binning**

Some binning operations average the pixel values after aggregation. When this happens, there is usually little or no change in overall image intensity. This type of binning is referred to as "binning plus averaging." Other binning operations do not perform any averaging after aggregation, which usually results in increased intensity. Binning without averaging is referred to as "additive binning."

Moving the ROI position to a different location does not require the camera to be stopped (isochronous transmission disabled) and restarted (iso enabled), unless the change is illegal (e.g. moving the ROI outside the imaging area) or would affect the isochronous packet size. Changing the size of the image or the pixel encoding format requires the stop/start procedure. Ignoring the time required to do this in software (tearing down, then reallocating, image buffers, write times to the camera, etc.), the maximum amount of time required for the stop/start procedure is slightly more than one frame time.

Additional binning information can be obtained by reading the `FORMAT_7_RESIZE_INQ` (page 145) register 0x1AC8. The implementation of Format\_7 modes and the frame rates that are possible are not specified by the IIDC, and are subject to change across firmware versions.

For information about configuring the camera in Format\_7 mode, see [Video Format and Mode CSRs on next page](#)

For information about configuring Format\_7 modes/sizes and Format\_7-related inquiry registers, see [Video Mode Control and Status Registers for Format\\_7 on page 144](#).



*When operating in Format\_7 mode, the Feature\_Lo\_Inq register 408h reports the presence of the Pan and Tilt features. However, these feature are off and cannot be turned on.*

## 4.2.1 Exceeding Bandwidth Limitations Using Format\_7

There is a mechanism for effectively bypassing IEEE-1394 bus bandwidth negotiation when using cameras in Format 7 partial image mode. This functionality is useful in any situation where the user is trying to host multiple cameras on the same bus in a configuration that would normally exceed the bandwidth allocation, but where the cameras are configured to transmit data in a manner that does not exceed the total bandwidth. An interactive bandwidth calculator is available in [Knowledge Base Article 22](#). It can be used to calculate approximate bandwidth requirements for various IIDC modes. For additional information, see [Knowledge Base Article 256](#).

## 4.2.2 Format\_7 Mode Descriptions

### Mode\_0

Mode\_0 allows only for specifying a region of interest, and does not perform any binning. This mode uses a relatively fast pixel clock, which can result in reduced smear, and faster frame rates when ROI height is reduced. However, overall image quality may be poorer than in Mode\_7. Extended shutter times in this mode are limited.

### Mode\_1

Mode\_1 implements a combination of 2X horizontal and 2X vertical additive binning. In color models, all binning is performed on the FPGA. In monochrome models, vertical binning is performed on the sensor, and horizontal binning is performed on the FPGA. This mode results in a resolution that is both half the width and half the height of the original image. Mode\_1 may result in an increase in brightness and improved signal-to-noise ratio. On color models, however, no frame rate increase is achieved.

### Mode\_3

Mode\_3 is an optimized imaging performance mode that operates by disabling the CCD pixel gain amplifier and slowing the vertical pixel clock shift register. These features result in reduced dark current and very long shutter times.

When operating in this mode, keep in mind the following:

- This mode implements 2X horizontal and 2X vertical additive binning, and is available only when outputting to a monochrome pixel format.
- Due to the slower pixel clock, image exposure and readout do not overlap. Although frame rates are compromised, the longest extended shutter times (up to 330 s) are available.
- The noise reduction feature of this mode is not available when operating in an asynchronous trigger mode.

### Mode\_4

Mode\_4 implements a combination of 2X horizontal and 2X vertical binning plus averaging, and is available on color models only. Vertical binning is performed prior to color processing, and horizontal binning is performed after color processing. Although image quality may be poorer than in Mode\_1, a frame rate increase is possible in this mode.

### Mode\_8

Mode\_8 is similar to Mode\_3, except this mode does not perform pixel binning, and is available in all pixel encoding formats.

## 4.3 Video Format and Mode CSRs

The following registers control the video format and mode of the camera.

### FRAME\_RATE: 83Ch

This register provides control over the frame rate of the camera. When this feature is in auto mode, exposure time is limited by the frame rate value dynamically, which is determined by CURRENT\_FRAME\_RATE register 600h ([page 39](#)). When this feature is in manual mode, the actual frame interval (time between individual image acquisitions) is fixed by the frame rate value. The available frame rate range depends on the current video format and/or video mode.

This register is set to OFF when the camera is operating in asynchronous trigger mode. For more information, see [TRIGGER\\_MODE: 830h on page 59](#).



*Formulas for converting the fixed point (relative) values to floating point (absolute) values are not provided. Users wishing to work with real-world values should refer to the Absolute Value CSRs section of the Appendix ([page 151](#)).*

### Format:

Same format as [BRIGHTNESS: 800h on page 87](#).

**Related Resources**

| Title  | Link                              |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| FlyCapture SDK <i>ExtendedShutterEx</i> sample program | <a href="#">ExtendedShutterEx</a> |

**CURRENT\_FRAME\_RATE: 600h**

Allows the user to query and modify the current frame rate of the camera.

**Format:**

| Field          | Bit    | Description                                      |
|----------------|--------|--|
| Cur_V_Frm_Rate | [0-2]  | Current frame rate<br>FrameRate_0 .. FrameRate_7 |
|                | [3-31] | Reserved.  |

**CURRENT\_VIDEO\_MODE: 604h**

Allows the user to query and modify the current video mode of the camera.

**Format:**

| Field      | Bit    | Description                            |
|------------|--------|--|
| Cur_V_Mode | [0-3]  | Current video mode<br>Mode_0 .. Mode_8 |
|            | [4-31] | Reserved.                              |

**CURRENT\_VIDEO\_FORMAT: 608h**

Allows the user to query and modify the current video format of the camera.

**Format:**

| Field        | Bit    | Description   |
|--------------|--------|---|
| Cur_V_Format | [0-2]  | Current video format<br>Format_0 .. Format_7<br><b>Note:</b> GigE Vision cameras operate only in Format_7 mode. |
|              | [3-31] | Reserved.   |

### 4.3.1 Example: Setting a Standard Video Mode, Format and Frame Rate Using the FlyCapture API

The following FlyCapture 2.0 code snippet sets the camera to one of the IIDC standard formats: 640x480 Y8 at 60 FPS.

```
Camera.SetVideoModeandFrameRate( VIDEOMODE_640x480Y8 , FRAMERATE_60 );
```

## 4.4 GS2-FW-14S5 Standard Formats, Modes and Frame Rates

### 4.4.1 Standard Formats, Modes and Frame Rates

| Models: ● 14S5C ● 14S5M |          |         |        |       |       |
|-------------------------|----------|---------|--------|-------|-------|
| Modes                   | 1.875fps | 3.75fps | 7.5fps | 15fps | 30fps |
| 640x480 YUV411          | ●        | ●       | ●      | ●     | ●     |
| 640x480 YUV422          | ●        | ●       | ●      | ●     | ●     |
| 640x480 RGB             | ●        | ●       | ●      | ●     | ●     |
| 640x480 Y8              | ●●       | ●●      | ●●     | ●●    | ●●    |
| 640x480 Y16             | ●●       | ●●      | ●●     | ●●    | ●●    |
| 1280x960 YUV 422        | ●        | ●       | ●      | ●     |       |
| 1280x960 RGB            | ●        | ●       | ●      | ●     |       |
| 1280x960 Y8             | ●●       | ●●      | ●●     | ●●    |       |
| 1280x960 Y16            | ●●       | ●●      | ●●     | ●●    |       |

Table 4.1: Supported video formats, modes and frame rates (GS2-FW-14S5)



#### 4.4.2 Format\_7 Modes and Frame Rates

| Mode | Pixel Format | Max Size (HxV) | Unit Size (H,V) | Max Res | 1280x 960 | 640x 480 | 320x 240 | 160x 120 |
|------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|---------|-----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 0    | Mono8        | 1384x1036      | 8,2             | 30      | 31        | 48       | 66       | 82       |
| 0    | Mono12       | 1384x1036      | 8,2             | 30      | 31        | 48       | 66       | 82       |
| 0    | Mono16       | 1384x1036      | 8,2             | 26      | 30        | 48       | 66       | 82       |
| 0    | Raw8         | 1384x1036      | 8,2             | 29      | 31        | 48       | 66       | 82       |
| 0    | Raw12        | 1384x1036      | 8,2             | 29      | 31        | 48       | 66       | 82       |
| 0    | Raw16        | 1384x1036      | 8,2             | 26      | 30        | 48       | 66       | 82       |
| 0    | RGB8         | 1384x1036      | 8,2             | 18      | 20        | 48       | 66       | 82       |
| 0    | YUV411       | 1384x1036      | 8,2             | 30      | 31        | 48       | 66       | 82       |
| 0    | YUV422       | 1384x1036      | 8,2             | 26      | 30        | 48       | 66       | 82       |
| 0    | YUV444       | 1384x1036      | 8,2             | 18      | 20        | 48       | 66       | 82       |
| 1    | Mono8        | 692x518        | 4,2             | 29      | -         | 31       | 48       | 66       |
| 1    | Mono12       | 692x518        | 4,2             | 29      | -         | 31       | 48       | 66       |
| 1    | Mono16       | 692x518        | 4,2             | 29      | -         | 31       | 48       | 66       |
| 1    | Raw8         | 692x518        | 4,2             | 29      | -         | 31       | 48       | 66       |
| 1    | Raw12        | 692x518        | 4,2             | 29      | -         | 31       | 48       | 66       |
| 1    | Raw16        | 692x518        | 4,2             | 29      | -         | 31       | 48       | 66       |
| 1    | RGB8         | 692x518        | 4,2             | 29      | -         | 31       | 48       | 66       |
| 1    | YUV411       | 692x518        | 4,2             | 29      | -         | 31       | 48       | 66       |
| 1    | YUV422       | 692x518        | 4,2             | 29      | -         | 31       | 48       | 66       |
| 1    | YUV444       | 692x518        | 4,2             | 29      | -         | 31       | 48       | 66       |
| 3    | Mono8        | 692x518        | -               | 11      | -         | -        | -        | -        |
| 3    | Mono12       | 692x518        | -               | 11      | -         | -        | -        | -        |
| 3    | Mono16       | 692x518        | -               | 11      | -         | -        | -        | -        |
| 4    | Mono8        | 692x518        | 4,2             | 48      | -         | 50       | 66       | 76       |
| 4    | Mono12       | 692x518        | 4,2             | 48      | -         | 50       | 66       | 76       |
| 4    | Mono16       | 692x518        | 4,2             | 48      | -         | 50       | 66       | 76       |
| 8    | Mono8        | 1384x1036      | -               | 6       | -         | -        | -        | -        |
| 8    | Mono12       | 1384x1036      | -               | 6       | -         | -        | -        | -        |
| 8    | Mono16       | 1384x1036      | -               | 6       | -         | -        | -        | -        |
| 8    | Raw8         | 1384x1036      | -               | 6       | -         | -        | -        | -        |
| 8    | Raw12        | 1384x1036      | -               | 6       | -         | -        | -        | -        |
| 8    | Raw16        | 1384x1036      | -               | 6       | -         | -        | -        | -        |

| Mode | Pixel Format | Max Size (HxV) | Unit Size (H,V) | Max Res | 1280x 960 | 640x 480 | 320x 240 | 160x 120 |
|------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|---------|-----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 8    | RGB8         | 1384x1036      | -               | 6       | -         | -        | -        | -        |
| 8    | YUV411       | 1384x1036      | -               | 6       | -         | -        | -        | -        |
| 8    | YUV422       | 1384x1036      | -               | 6       | -         | -        | -        | -        |
| 8    | YUV444       | 1384x1036      | -               | 6       | -         | -        | -        | -        |

**Table 4.2: Supported partial image (Format 7) video formats and modes for GS2-FW-14S5**

## 5 Image Acquisition and Transmission

### 5.1 Isochronous Data Transfer

Isochronous transmission is the transfer of image data from the camera to the PC in a continual stream that is regulated by an internal clock. Isochronous transfers on the 1394 bus guarantee timely delivery of data, but not necessarily integrity of data.

For more information about isochronous transmission, including packet formats and bandwidth requirements, see the isochronous packet section of the Appendix ([page 156](#))

#### 5.1.1 Camera Power and Isochronous Transmission

If isochronous transmit (ISO\_EN ([page 45](#)) / ONE\_SHOT / MULTI\_SHOT ([page 45](#))) is enabled while the camera is powered down, the camera will automatically write *Cam\_Pwr\_Ctrl* = 1 to power itself up. However, disabling isochronous transmission does not automatically power-down the camera.

The camera does not transmit images for the first 100 ms after power-up. The auto-exposure and auto-white balance algorithms do not run while the camera is powered down. It may therefore take several ( $n$ ) images to get a satisfactory image, where  $n$  is undefined.

When the camera is power cycled (power disengaged then re-engaged), the camera will revert to its default factory settings, or if applicable, the last saved memory channel. For more information, see [User Configuration Sets on page 18](#).

#### 5.1.2 When Camera Property Settings Take Effect

When the camera is in isochronous (free-running) transmission mode, it is not possible to guarantee that camera setting changes are applied to the 'next' image (that is, the image that is grabbed after a new property value is written). Properties such as gain and white balance are controlled by the analog-to-digital (A/D) converter, which makes it difficult to determine the exact amount of time required for certain settings to take effect.

In general, properties are applied to either the next image ( $n$ ) or the one after next ( $n+1$ ). Specifically:

- If the camera is in asynchronous (trigger) mode and gain is set before digitization (i.e. before analog data reaches the A/D converter and is sent out along the FireWire to the PC), the setting is applied to the next image. Using the camera in asynchronous (trigger) mode is the most reliable way of ensuring that camera property changes are applied to the next frame.
- If the camera is in isochronous (free-running) mode and gain is set, there is a low probability that the gain will be applied to the next image ( $n$ ). In most cases, the gain setting is applied to the image after next ( $n+1$ ). This is because the shutter period may be quite short (depending on the camera frame rate), which may not provide enough time for the setting to be applied before the data off the CCD reaches the A/D converter. CCD cameras tend to act similarly in terms of providing full control to the shutter. CCD cameras allow you to set the shutter at any

time, and apply it to the next image or the one after next. (See [Shutter](#) on page 88 for more information.) The amount of time for properties to become effective is also correlated with the frame rate. The higher the frame rate, the less certainty of when the effect takes place.

When the camera is running in continuous shot (free-running) mode, the worst-case scenario would require up to four (4) frames for a setting to take effect. The following list enumerates the sources of delay just after the parameter is set:

- All images that are currently buffered on the PC. These images are not affected by the latest parameter settings, but still must be grabbed. This is at most 1 image, except in cases where a variation of the BUFFER\_FRAMES enumerator is used (for users of the FlyCapture 2.0 SDK). In this case, the number of buffers that have been allocated minus 1 images needs to be grabbed.
- The image that is currently being transmitted from the camera. This image is not affected by the latest parameter setting, but must still be grabbed. In free-running mode, images are effectively being transmitted all the time.
- The image that is currently being integrated. It is possible that the parameter setting happened too late to affect the current image.

For example, consider 4 frames: A,B,C,D.

1. Frame A is already captured and waiting on the PC.
2. Frame B is just being captured.
3. The property value (ie: shutter, gain, etc.) is changed (while Frame B is being captured).
4. Frame C is captured. The new property value is not applied due to latency, type of property, and other factors).
5. Frame D is captured with the new property value.

To be sure you are obtaining an image with the new property applied to it, it is safest to take the 4th frame. In cases where it is important to determine and react to parameter changes in a faster manner, read the FRAME\_INFO register 12F8h ([page 109](#)) for the parameters applied to a specific frame. Note, however, that this register reads property values that have been written by the end of shutter integration, even if they are not yet in effect.

### ISO\_CHANNEL / ISO\_SPEED: 60Ch

Allows the user to query the camera's isochronous transmission channel and speed information.

#### **Format:**

| Field          | Bit    | Description  |
|----------------|--------|--|
| ISO_Channel    | [0-3]  | Isochronous channel number for video data transmission<br>(Except for Format_6)                        |
|                | [4-5]  | Reserved   |
| ISO_Speed      | [6-7]  | Isochronous transmit speed code.<br>(Except for Format_6)<br>0 = 100Mbps<br>1 = 200Mbps<br>2 = 400Mbps |
|                | [8-15] | Reserved   |
| Operation_Mode | [16]   | 1394 operation mode<br>Change control register sets of ISO_Channel and ISO_Speed                       |

| Field         | Bit     | Description   |
|---------------|---------|---|
|               |         | registers<br>0 = Legacy (v1.30 compatible)<br>1 = 1394.b (v1.31 mode)<br>Camera shall start in legacy mode for backward compatibility                             |
|               | [17]    | Reserved  |
| ISO_Channel_B | [18-23] | Isochronous channel number for video data transmission of 1394.b mode<br>(Except for Format_6)  |
|               | [24-28] | Reserved  |
| ISO_Speed_B   | [29-31] | Isochronous transmit speed code of 1394.b mode<br>(Except for Format_6)<br>0 = 100Mbps<br>1 = 200Mbps<br>2 = 400Mbps<br>3 = 800Mbps<br>4 = 1.6Gbps<br>5 = 3.2Gbps |

#### ISO\_EN / CONTINUOUS\_SHOT: 614h

This register allows the control of isochronous data transmission. During ISO\_EN = 1 or One\_Shot = 1 or Multi\_Shot = 1, the register value which reflects the Isochronous packet format cannot change. Data transfer control priority is ISO\_EN > One\_Shot > Multi\_Shot.

##### **Format:**

| Field                    | Bit    | Description   |
|--------------------------|--------|---|
| ISO_EN / Continuous Shot | [0]    | 1 = Start ISO transmission of video data.<br>0 = Stop ISO transmission of video data. Continuous Shot is not enabled. |
|                          | [1-31] | Reserved.   |

#### ONE\_SHOT / MULTI\_SHOT: 61Ch

This register allows the user to control single and multi-shot functionality of the camera. During ISO\_EN = 1, One\_Shot = 1 or Multi\_Shot = 1, the register value which reflects the Isochronous packet format cannot change. Data transfer control priority is ISO\_EN > One\_Shot > Multi\_Shot.

##### **Format:**

| Field        | Bit     | Description  |
|--------------|---------|--|
| One_Shot     | [0]     | 1 = only one frame of video data is transmitted.<br>(Self cleared after transmission)<br>Ignored if ISO_EN = 1           |
| Multi_Shot   | [1]     | 1 = N frames of video data is transmitted.<br>(Self cleared after transmission)<br>Ignored if ISO_EN = 1 or One_Shot = 1 |
|              | [2-15]  | Reserved.  |
| Count_Number | [16-31] | Count number for Multi-shot function.  |

## 5.2 High Dynamic Range (HDR) Imaging

The camera can be set into a High Dynamic Range mode in which it rotates between 4 user-defined shutter and gain settings, applying one gain and shutter value pair per frame. This allows images representing a wide range of shutter and gain settings to be collected in a short time to be combined into a final HDR image later. The camera does not create the final HDR image; this must be done by the user.

The format of the HDR registers is as follows:

| Offset | Register                         | Remarks                              |
|--------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 0x1800 | HDR control register             | Toggle bit [6] to enable/disable HDR |
| 0x1820 | HDR shutter register for image 0 | Similar to SHUTTER register 0x81C    |
| 0x1824 | HDR gain register for image 0    | Similar to GAIN register 0x820       |
| 0x1840 | HDR shutter register for image 1 | Similar to SHUTTER register 0x81C    |
| 0x1844 | HDR gain register for image 1    | Similar to GAIN register 0x820       |
| 0x1860 | HDR shutter register for image 2 | Similar to SHUTTER register 0x81C    |
| 0x1864 | HDR gain register for image 2    | Similar to GAIN register 0x820       |
| 0x1880 | HDR shutter register for image 3 | Similar to SHUTTER register 0x81C    |
| 0x1884 | HDR gain register for image 3    | Similar to GAIN register 0x820       |

Note that the on/off bit (bit [6]) for the HDR shutter and gain registers is hard-coded to on.

### HDR: 1800h – 1884h

This register allows the user to access and control a multiple exposure quick cycle mode, which is useful for high dynamic range (HDR) imaging.

Note that if bit [31] of the FRAME\_INFO register 12F8h ([page 109](#)) is set to 1, the camera will embed the current shutter / gain value in the image when bit [6] of HDR\_CTRL is set to 1. The image timestamp will be embedded in the first quadlet of image data, the shutter value in the second quadlet, and gain in the third, all in big-endian format.

#### **Format:**

| Offset | Name     | Field        | Bit    | Description  |
|--------|----------|--------------|--------|--|
| 1800h  | HDR_CTRL | Presence_Inq | [0]    | Presence of this feature<br>0: Not available, 1: Available   |
|        |          | -            | [1-5]  | Reserved   |
|        |          | ON_OFF       | [6]    | Write: ON or OFF for this feature<br>Read: read a status<br>0: OFF, 1: ON<br>If this bit = 0, other fields will be read only |
|        |          | -            | [7-31] | Reserved   |

| Offset | Name          | Field                        | Bit     | Description  |
|--------|---------------|------------------------------|---------|--|
| 1820h  | HDR_SHUTTER_0 | Presence_Inq                 | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: Not available, 1: Available           |
|        |               | -                            | [1-19]  | Reserved   |
|        |               | Value                        | [20-31] | Query SHUTTER_INQ register 51Ch for range of possible shutter values |
| 1824h  | HDR_GAIN_0    | Presence_Inq                 | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: Not available, 1: Available           |
|        |               | -                            | [1-19]  | Reserved   |
|        |               | Value                        | [20-31] | Query GAIN_INQ register 520h for range of possible gain values       |
| 1840h  | HDR_SHUTTER_1 | Same format as HDR_SHUTTER_0 |         |  |
| 1844h  | HDR_GAIN_1    | Same format as HDR_GAIN_0    |         |  |
| 1860h  | HDR_SHUTTER_2 | Same format as HDR_SHUTTER_0 |         |  |
| 1864h  | HDR_GAIN_2    | Same format as HDR_GAIN_0    |         |  |
| 1880h  | HDR_SHUTTER_3 | Same format as HDR_SHUTTER_0 |         |  |
| 1884h  | HDR_GAIN_3    | Same format as HDR_GAIN_0    |         |  |

## 5.3 Pixel Formats

### 5.3.1 Y16 (16-bit Mono) Image Acquisition

The camera can output Y16 (16 bit-per-pixel) mono images. Because the camera uses a 14-bit A/D converter (page 13), only 14 bits of data are useable. Unused bits are always zero.



*To determine the number of bits of useable image data, and resulting signal-to-noise ratio, that is actually being produced by the A/D converter, see [www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=170](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=170).*

The data format for Y16 images is controlled by the DATA\_DEPTH register 630h (page 47).

The PGM file format can be used to correctly save 16-bit images. Although the availability of photo manipulation/display applications that can correctly display true 16-bit images is limited, XV in Linux and Adobe Photoshop are two possibilities.

#### DATA\_DEPTH: 630h

This register allows the user to control the endianness of Y16 images.

**Format:**

| Field         | Bit    | Description   |
|---------------|--------|---|
| Data_Depth    | [0-7]  | Effective data depth of current image data.<br>If read value of Data_Depth is zero, shall ignore this field.<br>Write:<br>Ignored<br>Read:<br>Effective data depth                          |
| Little_Endian | [8]    | Little endian mode for 16-bit pixel formats only<br>Has no effect if not in a 16-bit pixel format<br>Write/Read:<br>0: Big endian mode (default on initialization)<br>1: Little endian mode |
|               | [9-31] | Reserved  |

### 5.3.2 Y8 or Y16 Raw Bayer Output

When operating in Y8 or Y16 mode, color models can output either grayscale or raw Bayer data. This output is controlled by the BAYER\_MONO\_CTRL register 1050h ([page 48](#)).

BAYER\_MONO\_CTRL: 1050h



*Selecting a half-width, half-height image size and monochrome pixel format, such as 800x600 Y8, using non-Format\_7 modes provides a monochrome binned image. In some cases, enabling raw Bayer output in mono mode provides a raw Bayer region of interest of 800x600, centered within the larger pixel array. This has an effect on the field of view.*

**Format:**

| Field           | Bit    | Description  |
|-----------------|--------|--|
| Presence_Inq    | [0]    | Presence of this feature.<br>0: N/A, 1: Available  |
|                 | [1-30] | Reserved.  |
| Bayer_Mono_Ctrl | [31]   | Value<br>0: Disable raw bayer output in non-Format_7 mono modes<br>1: Enable raw bayer output in non-Format_7 mono modes |

## 5.4 Automatic Inter-Camera Synchronization

Multiple Point Grey FireWire cameras, when they are on the same IEEE-1394 bus and running at the same frame rate, are automatically synchronized to each other at the hardware level. When using multiple cameras, the timing of one camera to another camera is as follows:



- If the cameras are on the same bus, the cameras are synchronized to within 125 $\mu$ s (microseconds) of each other (note: 125 $\mu$ s is the maximum deviation). However, the 1394 bandwidth limits the maximum number of cameras that can be on one bus. See the section Maximum Number of Cameras on a Single 1394 Bus for more information.
- If the cameras are on separate buses, use PointGrey's MultiSync™ software to synchronize the cameras across buses. This can be used to synchronize cameras on different buses within the same computer or on different buses across multiple computers. The software will ensure that the cameras are synchronized to within 125 $\mu$ s. If Multisync is not running, there is no timing correlation between separate cameras on separate buses.

It is possible to offset the synchronization of individual cameras relative to other cameras using the TRIGGER\_DELAY register 0x834 ([page 60](#)).

## 5.5 Asynchronous Triggering

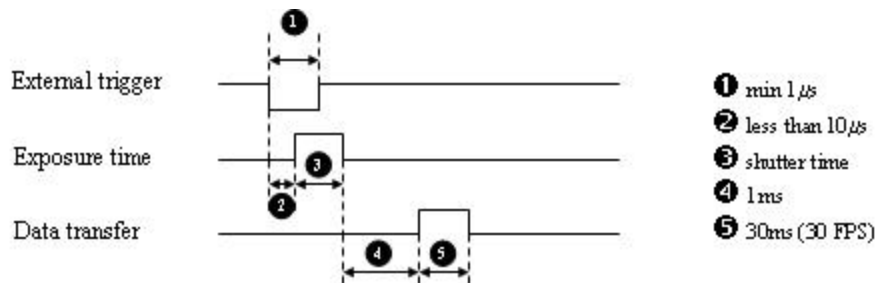
The camera supports a number of asynchronous trigger modes, which allow the start of exposure (shutter) to be initiated by an external electrical source (hardware trigger) or camera register write (software trigger).



*Color models operating in Video Mode\_4 ([page 37](#)) support Trigger\_Mode\_4 and Trigger\_Mode\_5 in monochrome pixel formats only.*

### 5.5.1 External Trigger Timing

The time from the external trigger going low to the start of shutter is shown below:



**Figure 5.1: External trigger timing characteristics**

It is possible for users to measure this themselves by configuring one of the camera's GPIO pins to output a strobe pulse (see [Programmable Strobe Output on page 61](#)) and connecting an oscilloscope up to the input trigger pin and the output strobe pin. The camera will strobe each time an image acquisition is triggered; the start of the strobe pulse represents the start of exposure.

### 5.5.2 Minimum Trigger Pulse Length

A digital signal debouncer helps to ensure that the camera does not respond to spurious electrical signals that are shorter than 16 ticks of the current pixel clock setting. This safeguard results in a

minimum 16-tick delay before the camera responds to a trigger signal. The pixel clock frequency can be read from the floating point PIXEL\_CLOCK\_FREQ register 0x1AF0 ([page 25](#)).

### 5.5.3 Maximum Frame Rate in External Trigger Mode

Historically, the maximum triggered frame rate has been limited by the camera's inability to overlap image transfer with the trigger input. This limitation applies to trigger modes 0, 1, 3, 4 and 5, where supported. The theoretical maximum triggered frame rate in these modes depends on the shutter time (in seconds) and the maximum frame rate of the camera in free-running mode (in Hz).

This relationship is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Max\_Frame\_Rate\_Trigger} = 1 / ( \text{Shutter} + ( 1 / \text{Max\_Frame\_Rate\_Free\_Running} ) )$$

For example, consider a camera that can acquire 640x480 images at 30Hz in normal “free-running” mode, at a shutter speed of 0.0020s:

$$\text{Max\_Frame\_Rate\_Triggered} = 1 / ( 0.0020 + ( 1 / 30 ) ) = 28.30\text{Hz}$$

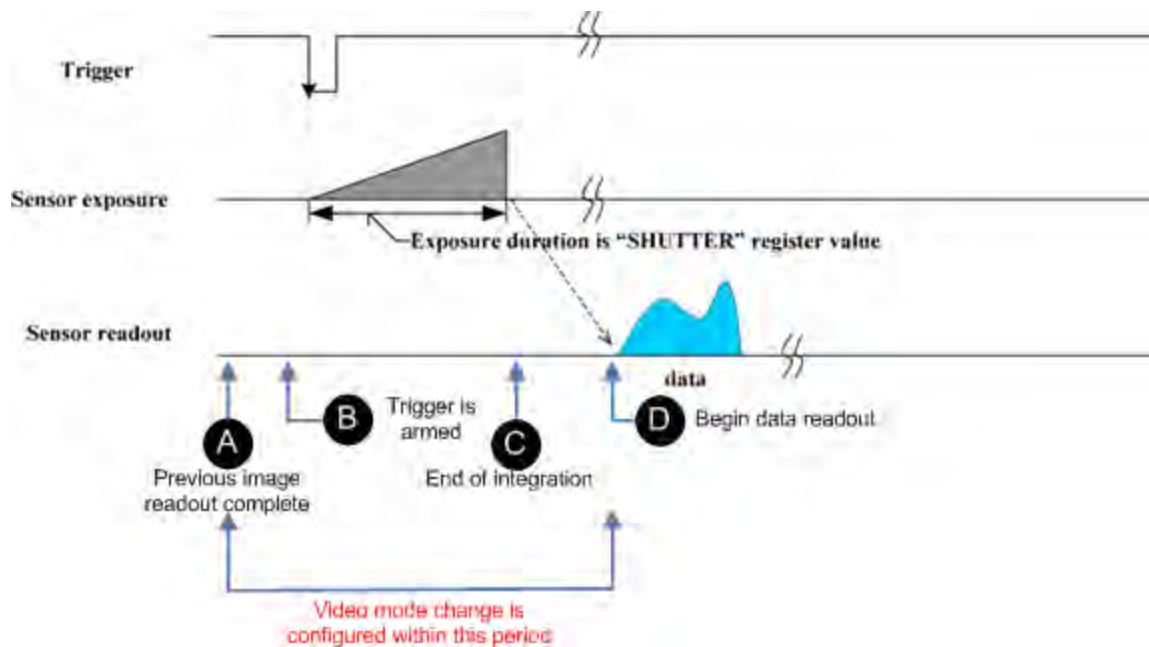
In contrast, trigger modes 14 and 15, where supported, overlap trigger input with image readout. These modes support external triggering at close to full frame rate.

### 5.5.4 Camera Behavior Between Triggers

When operating in external trigger mode, the camera clears charges from the sensor at the horizontal pixel clock rate determined by the current frame rate. For example, if the camera is set to 10 FPS, charges are cleared off the sensor at a horizontal pixel clock rate of 15 KHz. This action takes place following shutter integration, until the next trigger is received. At that point, the horizontal clearing operation is aborted, and a final clearing of the entire sensor is performed prior to shutter integration and transmission.

### 5.5.5 Changing Video Modes While Triggering

You can change the video format and mode of the camera while operating in trigger mode. Whether the new mode that is requested takes effect in the next triggered image depends on the timing of the request and the trigger mode in effect. The diagram below illustrates the relationship between triggering and changing video modes.



**Figure 5.2: Relationship Between External Triggering and Video Mode Change Request**

When operating in trigger mode 0 ([page 51](#)) or trigger mode 1 ([page 52](#)), video mode change requests made before point A on the diagram are honored in the next triggered image. The camera will attempt to honor a request made after point A in the next triggered image, but this attempt may or may not succeed, in which case the request is honored one triggered image later. In trigger mode 14 ([page 54](#)), point B occurs before point A. The result is that, in most cases, there is a delay of one triggered image for a video mode request, made before the configuration period, to take effect. In trigger mode 15 ([page 55](#)), change requests made after point A for any given image readout are honored only after a delay of one image.

## 5.5.6 Supported Trigger Modes

### 5.5.6.1 Trigger\_Mode\_0 (“Standard External Trigger Mode”)

Trigger\_Mode\_0 is best described as the standard external trigger mode. When the camera is put into Trigger\_Mode\_0, the camera starts integration of the incoming light from external trigger input falling/rising edge. The SHUTTER register describes integration time. No parameter is required. The camera can be triggered in this mode using the GPIO pins as external trigger or the SOFTWARE\_TRIGGER (62Ch) register.

It is not possible to trigger the camera at full frame rate using Mode\_0; however, this is possible using Trigger\_Mode\_14.

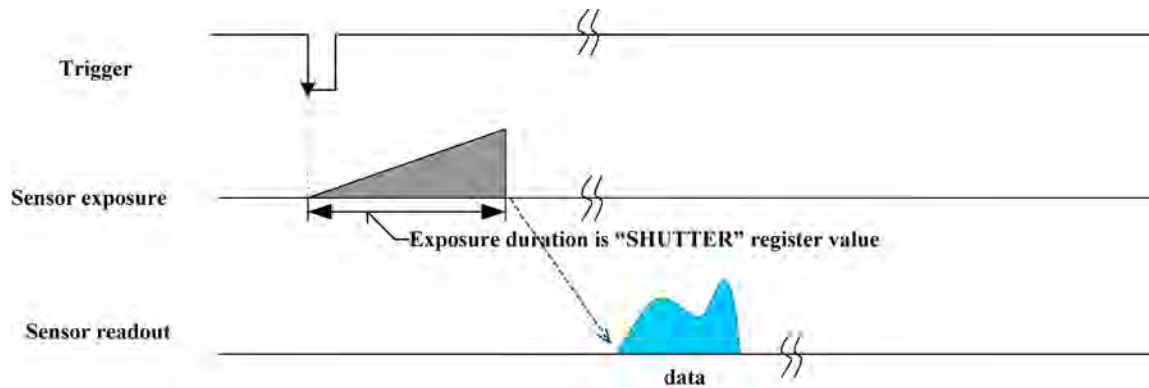


Figure 5.3: Trigger\_Mode\_0 ("Standard External Trigger Mode")

### 5.5.6.2 Trigger\_Mode\_1 ("Bulb Shutter Mode")

Also known as Bulb Shutter mode, the camera starts integration of the incoming light from external trigger input falling edge. Integration time is equal to low state time of the external trigger input.

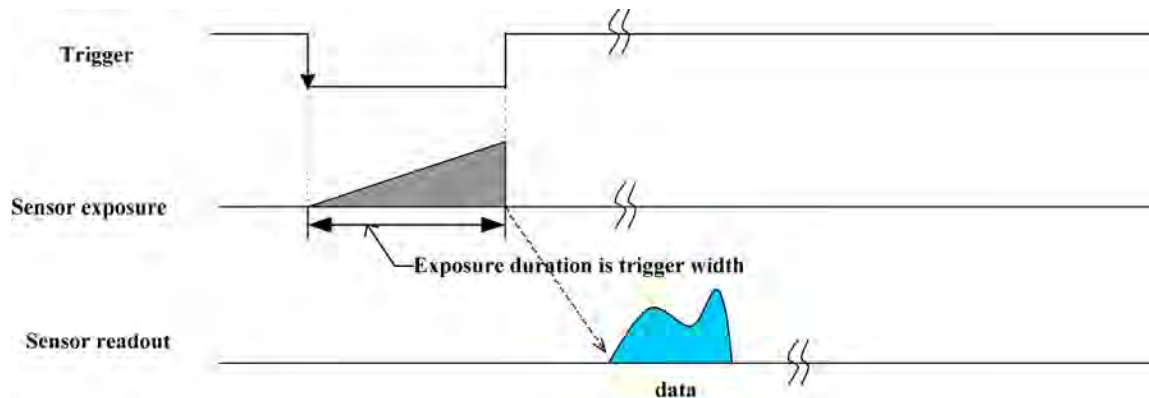


Figure 5.4: Trigger\_Mode\_1 ("Bulb Shutter Mode")

### 5.5.6.3 Trigger\_Mode\_3 ("Skip Frames Mode")

Trigger\_Mode\_3 allows the user to put the camera into a mode where the camera only transmits one out of N specified images. This is an internal trigger mode that requires no external interaction. Where N is the parameter set in bits [20-31] of the TRIGGER\_MODE register (offset 830h), the camera will issue a trigger internally at a cycle time that is N times greater than the current frame rate. Again, the SHUTTER register describes integration time. Note that this is different from the IIDC specification that states the cycle time will be N times greater than the fastest frame rate.

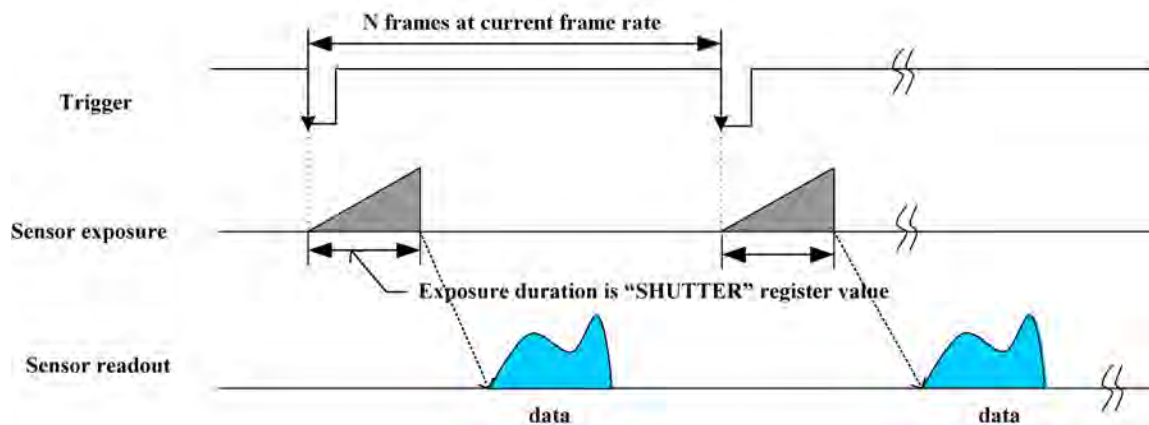


Figure 5.5: Trigger\_Mode\_3 ("Skip Frames Mode")

#### 5.5.6.4 Trigger\_Mode\_4 ("Multiple Exposure Preset Mode")

Trigger\_Mode\_4 allows the user to set the number of triggered images to be exposed before the image readout starts. In the case of Trigger\_Mode\_4, the shutter time is controlled by the SHUTTER CSR value; the minimum resolution of the duration is therefore limited by the shutter resolution.

In the figure below, the camera starts integration of incoming light from the first external trigger input falling edge and exposes incoming light at shutter time. Repeat this sequence for N (parameter) external trigger inputs edge then finish integration. Parameter is required and shall be one or more ( $N \geq 1$ ).

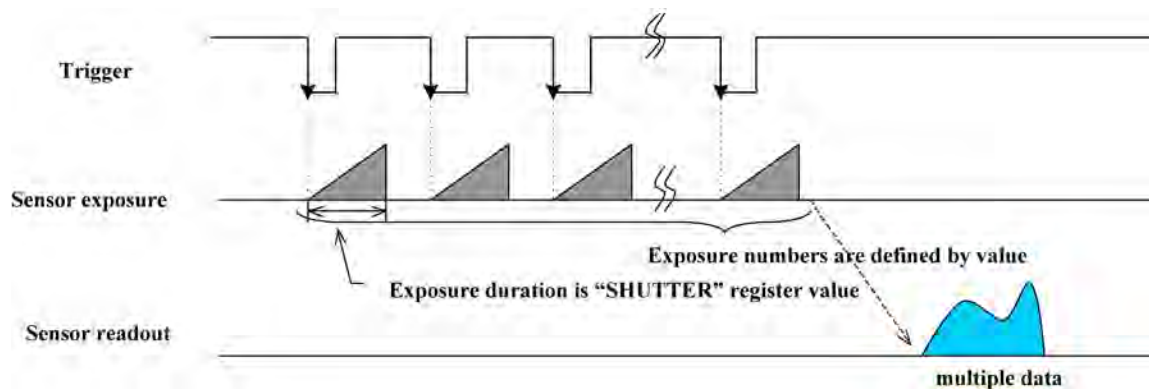


Figure 5.6: Trigger\_Mode\_4 ("Multiple Exposure Preset Mode")

#### 5.5.6.5 Trigger\_Mode\_5 ("Multiple Exposure Pulse Width Mode")

Trigger\_Mode\_5 allows the user to set the number of triggered images to be exposed before the image readout starts. In the case of Trigger\_Mode\_5, the shutter time is controlled by the trigger pulse duration; the minimum resolution of the duration is generally 1 tick of the pixel clock (see [PIXEL\\_CLOCK\\_FREQ: 1AF0h on page 25](#)). The resolution also depends on the quality of the input trigger signal and the current TRIGGER\_DELAY ([page 60](#)).

In the figure below, the camera starts integration of incoming light from the first external trigger input falling edge and exposes incoming light until the trigger is inactive. Repeat this sequence for N

(parameter) external trigger inputs then finish integration. Parameter is required and shall be one or more ( $N \geq 1$ ).

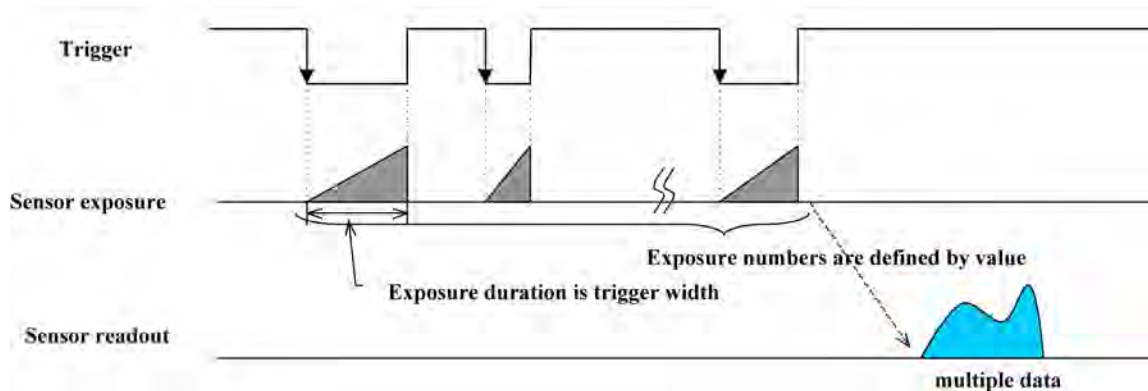


Figure 5.7: Trigger\_Mode\_5 ("Multiple Exposure Pulse Width Mode")

#### 5.5.6.6 Trigger\_Mode\_14 ("Overlapped Exposure / Readout Mode")

Trigger\_Mode\_14 is a vendor-unique trigger mode that is very similar to Trigger\_Mode\_0, but allows for triggering at faster frame rates. This mode works well for users who want to drive exposure start with an external event. However, users who need a precise exposure start should use Trigger\_Mode\_0.

In the figure below, the trigger may be overlapped with the readout of the image, similar to continuous shot (free-running) mode. If the trigger arrives after readout is complete, it will start as quickly as the imaging area can be cleared. If the trigger arrives before the end of shutter integration (that is, before the trigger is *armed* (page 57) ), it is dropped. If the trigger arrives while the image is still being read out of the sensor, the start of exposure will be delayed until the next opportunity to clear the imaging area without injecting noise into the output image. The end of exposure cannot occur before the end of the previous image readout. Therefore, exposure start may be delayed to ensure this, which means priority is given to maintaining the proper exposure time instead of to the trigger start.

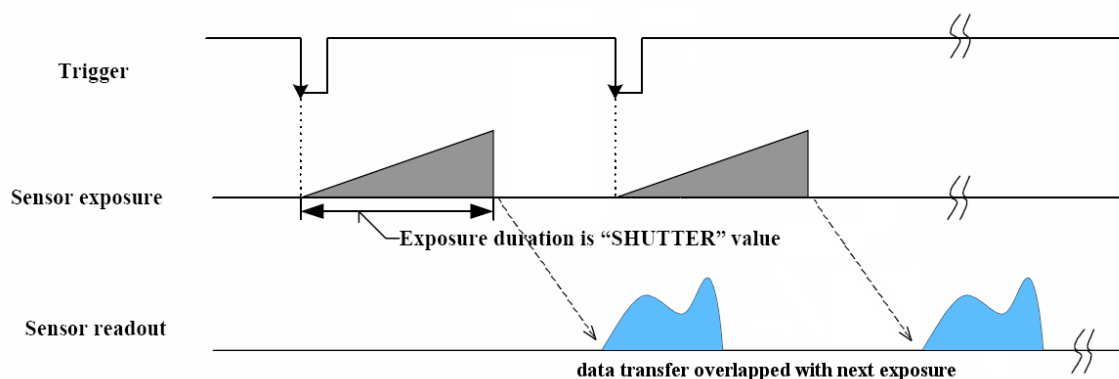


Figure 5.8: Trigger\_Mode\_14 ("Overlapped Exposure / Readout Mode")

### 5.5.6.7 Trigger\_Mode\_15 (“Multi-Shot Trigger Mode”)

Trigger\_Mode\_15 is a vendor-unique trigger mode that allows the user to fire a single hardware or software trigger and have the camera acquire and stream a predetermined number of images at the current frame rate.

The number of images to be acquired is determined by the Parameter field of the TRIGGER\_MODE register 0x830, which allows up to 255 images to be acquired from a single trigger. Writing a value of 0 to the parameter field will result in an infinite number of images to be acquired, essentially allowing users to trigger the camera into a free-running mode. Once the trigger is fired, the camera will acquire N images with an exposure time equal to the value defined by the SHUTTER register, and stream the images to the host system at the current frame rate. Once this is complete, the camera can be triggered again to repeat the sequence.

Any write to the TRIGGER\_MODE register 0x830 will cause the current sequence to stop.

**Note:** during the capture of N images, the camera is still in an asynchronous trigger mode (essentially Trigger Mode 14), rather than continuous (free-running) mode. The result of this is that the FRAME\_RATE register 0x83C will be turned OFF, and the camera put into extended shutter mode (see [Knowledge Base Article 166](#)). Users should therefore ensure that the maximum shutter time is limited to  $1/\text{frame\_rate}$  to get the N images captured at the current frame rate.

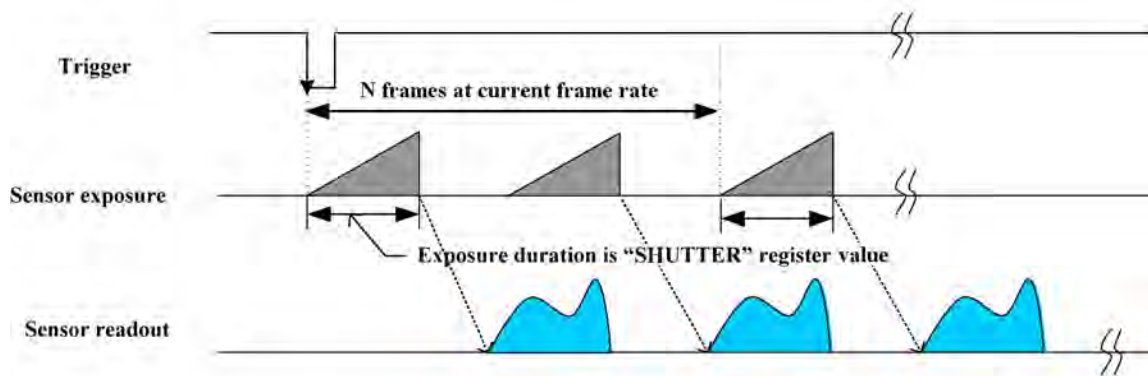


Figure 5.9: Trigger\_Mode\_15 (“Multi-Shot Trigger Mode”)

## 5.5.7 Example: Asynchronous Hardware Triggering (Using the Camera Registers)

The following example illustrates how to synchronize image acquisition to a trigger from an external hardware device in trigger Mode\_0 ([page 51](#)).

### Determine the Default External Trigger Pin

One of the camera GPIO pins is configured as the default trigger. To determine which pin is the default input/trigger pin either:

1. See *General Purpose Input/Output*; or

2. Get the value of the TRIGGER\_MODE register 0x830. The *Trigger\_Source* field (bits 8-10) is the current trigger source. For example, if the value represented by the *Trigger\_Source* field is 0, the default trigger source is GPIO0.

For example:

$$0x830 = 0x80100000$$

|      |      |      |      |       |      |       |      |        |
|------|------|------|------|-------|------|-------|------|--------|
| 8    | 0    | 1    | 0    | 0     | 0    | 0     | 0    | Hex    |
| 1000 | 0000 | 0001 | 0000 | 0000  | 0000 | 0000  | 0000 | Binary |
| 0-7  |      | 8-15 |      | 16-23 |      | 24-31 |      | Bits   |

This indicates that a Trigger Mode is available (bit 0 = 1) but not currently enabled (bit 6 = 0). It also indicates that GPIO0 is the default trigger pin (bits 8-10 = 0), and the default polarity of the pin is active low (bit 7 = 0), which means the camera trigger on the falling edge of a pulse.

### Configure a Different GPIO Pin to be an External Trigger

If you wish to use a different GPIO pin as the external trigger instead of the default trigger, you will need to configure the specific pin to be an input trigger, then configure the camera to use this newly allocated trigger pin.

For example, to configure the camera to use GPIO2 as the external trigger pin:

1. Get the value of the PIO\_DIRECTION register 0x11F8 ([page 60](#)) to determine the current states of each GPIO pin. For example:

$$0x11F8 = 0x20000000$$

|      |      |      |      |       |      |       |      |        |
|------|------|------|------|-------|------|-------|------|--------|
| 2    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0     | 0    | 0     | 0    | Hex    |
| 0010 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000  | 0000 | 0000  | 0000 | Binary |
| 0-7  |      | 8-15 |      | 16-23 |      | 24-31 |      | Bits   |

Each of the first four bits represents the current state of its associated GPIO pin: '0' indicates it is a input/trigger, and '1' indicates it is an output/strobe. In the example above, 0x2 = 0010 in binary, so GPIO0, GPIO1 and GPIO 3 are all configured as inputs and GPIO2 is an output.

2. To set GPIO2 in the example above to be an input/trigger, and all other GPIO pins as outputs:

$$0x11F8 = 0xD0000000$$

|      |      |      |      |       |      |       |      |        |
|------|------|------|------|-------|------|-------|------|--------|
| D    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0     | 0    | 0     | 0    | Hex    |
| 1101 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000  | 0000 | 0000  | 0000 | Binary |
| 0-7  |      | 8-15 |      | 16-23 |      | 24-31 |      | Bits   |

3. Configure the camera to use GPIO2 as the external trigger source by setting bits 8-10 of the TRIGGER\_MODE register ([page 59](#)). For example, for GPIO pin "2", we set bits 8-10 to 010, which is 2 in binary):



0x830 = 0x8040000000 (assumes bits 11-31 are zero)

|      |      |      |      |       |      |       |      |        |
|------|------|------|------|-------|------|-------|------|--------|
| 8    | 0    | 4    | 0    | 0     | 0    | 0     | 0    | Hex    |
| 1000 | 0000 | 0100 | 0000 | 0000  | 0000 | 0000  | 0000 | Binary |
| 0-7  |      | 8-15 |      | 16-23 |      | 24-31 |      | Bits   |

### Enable Trigger Mode

The camera must be put into Trigger Mode\_0 to allow it to be externally triggered.

To do this in the FlyCap graphical user interface:

1. Open the Camera Control Dialog
2. Select the "Trigger" tab
3. Check the "Enable/disable trigger" ("Trigger On/Off" in earlier versions) checkbox

To do this by directly accessing the camera's TRIGGER\_MODE register ([page 59](#)):

1. Get register 0x830
2. Turn trigger Mode\_0 ON by setting bit 6 to one (1) and setting bits 12-15 to zero (0)

### Ensuring Trigger is Armed

It is possible for the camera to be in asynchronous trigger mode but not be ready to accept a trigger. The reason is the camera may be currently exposing an image; the camera is only ready to be triggered again when this image finishes integrating.

To ensure that the camera is ready to be triggered, poll the SOFTWARE\_TRIGGER register 0x62C ([page 61](#)). The concept of polling to ensure the trigger is armed is demonstrated in the [AsyncTriggerEx](#) example program distributed with the *FlyCapture* SDK.

Once the trigger is reporting that it is armed, there should be no delay between when the user can enable isochronous transmission and when they can trigger the camera. In fact, it is possible to trigger the camera before iso is enabled and receive the image that was triggered, provided iso is enabled at some point during exposure. For example, assuming a 10 ms shutter time, it is possible to trigger the camera, enable iso 5 ms after, and still receive the triggered image.

### Externally Trigger the Camera

At this point, one of the camera's GPIO pins should be configured as the external trigger source, the camera should be in Trigger Mode\_0, and the trigger is armed and ready to be fired. To acquire an image, connect the external 5V or 3.3V TTL synchronization signal to the GPIO pin. Once the trigger signal is received, an image will be grabbed.

## 5.5.8 Example: Asynchronous Hardware Triggering (Using the FlyCapture API)

The following FlyCapture 2.x code sample uses the C++ interface to do the following:

- Sets the trigger mode to Mode\_0.
- Configures GPIO0 as the trigger input source.
- Enables triggered acquisition.
- Specifies the trigger signal polarity as an active high (rising edge) signal.

Assuming a Camera object cam:

```
TriggerMode mTrigger;

mTrigger.mode = 0;

mTrigger.source = 0;

mTrigger.parameter = 0;

mTrigger.onOff = true;

mTrigger.polarity = 1;

cam.SetTriggerMode(&mTrigger);
```

### 5.5.9 Asynchronous Software Triggering

Shutter integration can be initiated by a register write (software trigger) via SOFTWARE\_TRIGGER register 0x62C ([page 61](#)).

The time from a software trigger initiation to the start of shutter is shown below:

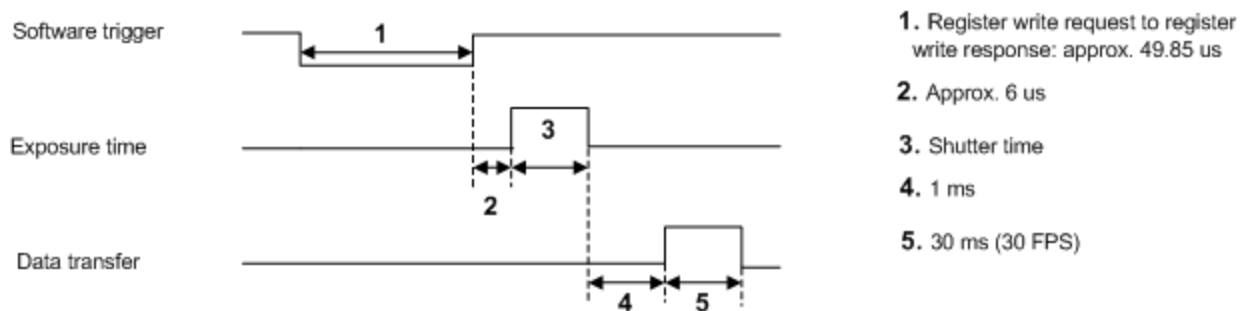


Figure 5.10: Software trigger timing

The time from when the SOFTWARE\_TRIGGER register is written on the camera to when the start of integration occurs can only be approximated. The average time from register write request to register write response is approximately 49.85us. The "register write success" response is only sent from the camera to the host system once the internal trigger pulse is initiated. We then add the trigger latency (time from the trigger pulse to the start of integration) to this, which is approximately 6us for a camera capturing 640x480 images. Therefore, the total time from when the register is written to the start of integration is approximately 56us.



*This timing is solely from the camera perspective. It is virtually impossible to predict timing from the user perspective due to latencies in the processing of commands on the host PC.*

### 5.5.10 Asynchronous Trigger Registers

For information about working with the trigger registers in your FlyCapture application, refer to the AsyncTriggerEx sample program, available with the FlyCapture SDK.

#### TRIGGER\_MODE: 830h

This register controls the trigger mode. Control of the register is via the *ON\_OFF* bit and the *Trigger\_Mode* and *Parameter* fields.



*When the ON\_OFF bit is set to ON (enabling trigger mode), the FRAME\_RATE register (page 38) is taken out of Auto control state and turned to Off state. This change affects the maximum shutter time. For more information, see Extended Shutter Times (page 88). Additionally, if Auto exposure is enabled (page 92), maximum frame rate may be reduced. When the ON\_OFF bit is set back to OFF, the FRAME\_RATE register is not automatically turned back on or returned to Auto control state.*

The *Trigger\_Source* bit is used to select which GPIO pin will be used for external trigger purposes.

The *Trigger\_Value* bit is used to determine the current raw signal value on the pin.

The *Trigger\_Mode* bit is used to set the trigger mode to be used. For more information, see [Supported Trigger Modes on page 51](#).

#### Format

| Field            | Bit    | Description   |
|------------------|--------|---|
| Presence_Inq     | [0]    | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A, 1: Available  |
| Abs_Control      | [1]    | Absolute value control<br>0: Control with the value in the Value field<br>1: Control with the value in the Absolute value CSR.<br>If this bit = 1, the value in the Value field is read-only. |
|                  | [2-5]  | Reserved  |
| ON_OFF           | [6]    | Write: ON or OFF for this feature<br>Read: read a status<br>0: OFF, 1: ON<br>If this bit = 0, other fields will be read only  |
| Trigger_Polarity | [7]    | Select trigger polarity (except for Software_Trigger)<br>0: Trigger active low, 1: Trigger active high  |
| Trigger_Source   | [8-10] | Select trigger source<br>Sets trigger source ID from <i>Trigger_Source_Inq</i> field of TRIGGER_INQ register (page 140).  |
| Trigger_Value    | [11]   | Trigger input raw signal value<br>Read only<br>0: Low, 1: High  |
|                  | [8-11] | Reserved  |

| Field        | Bit     | Description   |
|--------------|---------|---|
| Trigger_Mode | [12-15] | Trigger mode (Trigger_Mode_0..15)<br>Sets the trigger mode. Query the <i>Trigger_Mode_Inq</i> fields of the TRIGGER_INQ register for available trigger modes. |
|              | [16-19] | Reserved  |
| Parameter    | [20-31] | Parameter for trigger function, if required (optional)  |

**TRIGGER\_DELAY: 834h**

This register provides control over the time delay between one of the following, depending on the current mode:

1. Asynchronous trigger mode: controls the delay between the trigger event and the start of integration (shutter open).
2. Continuous shot (free-running) mode: controls the synchronization offset of the camera relative to normal synchronization. This is useful for offsetting image acquisition between automatically synchronized cameras. For more information, see [Automatic Inter-Camera Synchronization on page 48](#).

Delay is in units of a 24.576 MHz clock. Less than 1024 ticks is linear; greater than 1024 ticks is non-linear. Consider using register 950h ABS\_VAL\_TRIGGER\_DELAY ([page 152](#))

**Format:**

| Field        | Bit     | Description   |
|--------------|---------|---|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A, 1: Available  |
| Abs_Control  | [1]     | Absolute value control<br>0: Control with the value in the Value field<br>1: Control with the value in the Absolute value CSR.<br>If this bit = 1, the value in the Value field is read-only. |
|              | [2-5]   | Reserved  |
| ON_OFF       | [6]     | Write: ON or OFF for this feature<br>Read: read a status<br>0: OFF, 1: ON<br>If this bit = 0, other fields will be read only  |
|              | [7-19]  | Reserved  |
| Value        | [20-31] | Value.  |

**PIO\_DIRECTION: 11F8h**

If the *IOx\_Mode* bit is asserted (write a '1'), this means the GPIO pin is currently configured as an output and the *Pin\_Mode* of the GPIO pin (see the GPIO\_CTRL\_PIN\_x register) is GPIO\_Mode\_8. Otherwise, the *Pin\_Mode* will be GPIO\_Mode\_0 (Input). The PIO\_DIRECTION register is writeable only when the current GPIO\_Mode is GPIO\_Mode\_0 or GPIO\_Mode\_8.

**Format**

| Field    | Bit | Description                |
|----------|-----|----------------------------|
| IO0_Mode | [0] | Current mode of GPIO Pin 0 |

| Field    | Bit    | Description                                       |
|----------|--------|---|
|          |        | 0: Other, 1: Output                               |
| IO1_Mode | [1]    | Current mode of GPIO Pin 1<br>0: Other, 1: Output |
| IO2_Mode | [2]    | Current mode of GPIO Pin 2<br>0: Other, 1: Output |
| IO3_Mode | [3]    | Current mode of GPIO Pin 3<br>0: Other, 1: Output |
|          | [4-31] | Reserved  |

### SOFTWARE\_TRIGGER: 62Ch

This register allows the user to generate a software asynchronous trigger.

#### Format:

| Field            | Bit | Description   |
|------------------|-----|---|
| Software_Trigger | [0] | Write: 0: Reset software trigger, 1: Set software trigger<br>This bit automatically resets to zero in all <a href="#">trigger modes</a> except Trigger_Mode = 3.<br>Read: 0: Ready, 1: Busy |

## 5.6 External Device Control

### 5.6.1 Programmable Strobe Output

The camera is capable of outputting a strobe pulse off select GPIO pins that are configured as outputs. The start of the strobe can be offset from either the start of exposure (free-running mode) or time of incoming trigger (external trigger mode). By default, a pin that is configured as a strobe output will output a pulse each time the camera begins integration of an image.

The duration of the strobe can also be controlled. Setting a strobe duration value of zero produces a strobe pulse with duration equal to the exposure (shutter) time.

Multiple GPIO pins, configured as outputs, can strobe simultaneously.

Connecting two strobe pins directly together is not supported. Instead, place a diode on each strobe pin.

The camera can also be configured to output a variable strobe pulse pattern. The strobe pattern functionality allows users to define the frames for which the camera will output a strobe. For example, this is useful in situations where a strobe should only fire:

- Every Nth frame (e.g. odd frames from one camera and even frames from another); or
- N frames in a row out of T (e.g. the last 3 frames in a set of 6); or
- Specific frames within a defined period (e.g. frames 1, 5 and 7 in a set of 8)

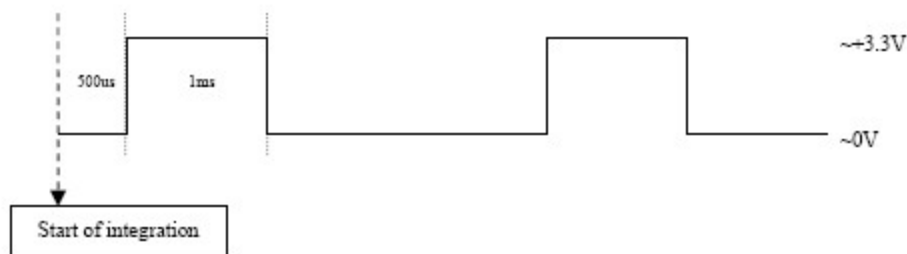
**Related Knowledge Base Articles**

| ID  | Title  | URL  |
|-----|--|--|
| 200 | Buffering a GPIO pin strobe output signal using an optocoupler to drive external devices | <a href="http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=200">www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=200</a> |
| 212 | GPIO strobe signal continues after isochronous image transfer stops                      | <a href="http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=212">www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=212</a> |

**5.6.1.1 Example: Setting a GPIO Pin to Strobe (Using the Camera Registers)**

Consider the following example strobe scenario:

- Desired strobe output pin: GPIO2
- Strobe output characteristics: 500us delay from start of shutter, 1ms high duration (see below)

**Determine the Default Output Pins**

Electrically, general purpose input/output pins are in one of two states: input or output. In order for a GPIO pin to act as a strobe output source, it must be configured as an output. To determine which of the GPIO pins are outputs by default, get the value of the PIO\_DIRECTION register 0x11F8 (page 60). The IOx\_Mode fields (bits 0-3) report the current state of the corresponding pin. For example:

$$0x11F8 = 0x4000\ 0000$$

|      |      |      |      |       |      |       |      |        |
|------|------|------|------|-------|------|-------|------|--------|
| 4    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0     | 0    | 0     | 0    | Hex    |
| 0100 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000  | 0000 | 0000  | 0000 | Binary |
| 0-7  |      | 8-15 |      | 16-23 |      | 24-31 |      | Bits   |

Each of the first four bits represents the current state of its associated GPIO pin: '0' indicates it is an input/trigger, and '1' indicates it is an output/strobe. In the example above, 0x4 = 0100 in binary, so GPIO1 is configured as an output and GPIO0, GPIO2 and GPIO3 are inputs.

**Set the Desired Pin as an Output**

Following the example above, assume we want to configure GPIO2 to be an output. To do this, set the appropriate bit of the PIO\_DIRECTION register 0x11F8 (in this case bit 2) to '1'. In the example above, we would therefore do the following register write:

$$0x11F8 = 0x6000\ 0000$$

## Determine Strobe Support

The next step is to determine whether our desired strobe pin, GPIO2, is capable of outputting a strobe signal. To do this, get the value of the appropriate STROBE\_x\_INQ register ([page 68](#)); in this case, the STROBE\_0\_INQ register 0x1408. Assuming we have correctly configured GPIO2 to be an output, we should get a value of:

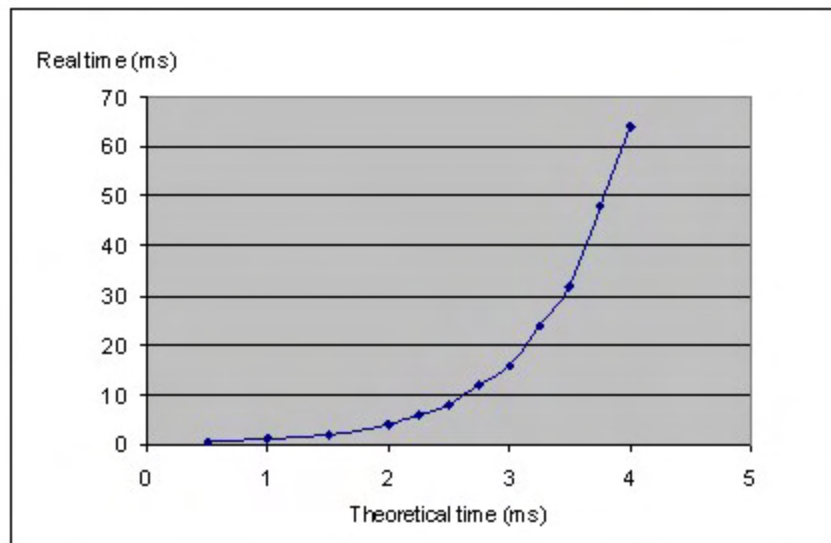
|      |      |      |      |       |      |       |      |        |
|------|------|------|------|-------|------|-------|------|--------|
| 8    | E    | 0    | 0    | 0     | F    | F     | F    | Hex    |
| 1000 | 1110 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000  | 1111 | 1111  | 1111 | Binary |
| 0-7  |      | 8-15 |      | 16-23 |      | 24-31 |      | Bits   |

Bit 0 is a '1', which confirms that the strobe functionality is present on this GPIO pin. Bit 4 points to the ability to read the value of this feature. Bit 5 indicates the ability to turn the strobe on and off, and bit 6 indicates that we can change the strobe signal polarity. Bits 8-19 are '0', which means the minimum strobe duration is zero. Bits 20-31 are '0xFFFF' or 4096 in decimal, so the maximum strobe delay and duration is 4096.

## Configure the Desired Pin to Output a Strobe

At this point, GPIO2 is set as an output pin and we know it can be a strobe signal source. Now, we need to enable it as a strobe source by "turning it on" using the GPIO pin's STROBE\_x\_CNT register ([page 68](#)).

Continuing our example, the desired strobe pin is GPIO2. Therefore, we want to look at the STROBE\_2\_CNT register 0x1508. The values that we enter in the *Delay\_Value* and *Duration\_Value* fields of this register are determined as follows: for values up to approximately 0x400 (1024 decimal), each value increment is a tick of a 1.024MHz clock. Values between 0x401 and 0xFF become non-linear in the manner shown in the figure below:



| Duration_Value / Delay_Value | Real Time (ms) |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| 0x050                        | 0.078          |

| Duration_Value / Delay_Value | Real Time (ms) |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| 0x200                        | 0.5            |
| 0x400                        | 1              |
| 0x600                        | 2              |
| 0x800                        | 4              |
| 0x900                        | 6              |
| 0xA00                        | 8              |
| 0xB00                        | 12             |
| 0xC00                        | 16             |
| 0xD00                        | 24             |
| 0xE00                        | 32             |
| 0xF00                        | 48             |
| 0xFFF                        | 63.93          |

For example, to achieve a 500us delay and 1ms duration we calculate:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Delay\_Value} &= 0.0005\text{s} * 1024000\text{Hz} = 512 = 0x200 \\ \text{Duration\_Value} &= 0.001\text{s} * 1024000\text{Hz} = 1024 = 0x400\end{aligned}$$

To finish configuring GPIO2 to output a strobe pulse of 500us delay from the start of integration and 1ms high duration (high active output), we make the following final register write:

$$0x1508 = 0x8320 \ 0400$$

### 5.6.1.2 Example: Setting a GPIO Pin to Strobe (Using the FlyCapture API)

The following FlyCapture 2.x code sample uses the C++ interface to do the following:

- Configures GPIO1 as the strobe output pin.
- Enables strobe output.
- Specifies an active high (rising edge) strobe signal.
- Specifies that the strobe signal begin 1 ms after the shutter opens.
- Specifies the duration of the strobe as 1.5 ms.

Assuming a `Camera` object `cam`:

```
StrobeControl mStrobe;

mStrobe.source = 1;

mStrobe.parameter = 0;

mStrobe.onOff = true;

mStrobe.polarity = 1;

mStrobe.delay = 1.0f;

mStrobe.duration = 1.5f
```



```
cam.SetStrobeControl(&mStrobe);
```

### 5.6.1.3 Example: Setting GPIO Pins to Output a Strobe Pattern

Consider the following example strobe pattern scenario for two cameras on the same IEEE-1394 bus:

| Parameter                     | Value  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| Camera model                  |  |
| Frame rate                    | 15Hz   |
| Shutter (integration) time    | Manual mode, 15ms  |
| Strobe output pin             | GPIO2  |
| Strobe output characteristics | High active output, 1ms duration   |
| Strobe output pattern (Cam_A) | Strobe every three (3) frames. The strobe should occur on the third frame. Effective strobe frequency = $15 / 3 = 5\text{Hz}$ .  |
| Strobe output pattern (Cam_B) | Strobe every two (2) frames. The strobe should occur on the second frame. Effective strobe frequency = $15 / 2 = 7.5\text{Hz}$ . |

This configuration is outlined below. Multiple cameras on the same bus are automatically synchronized to each other, so with this configuration the strobes of the two cameras should be synchronized at every sixth frame.

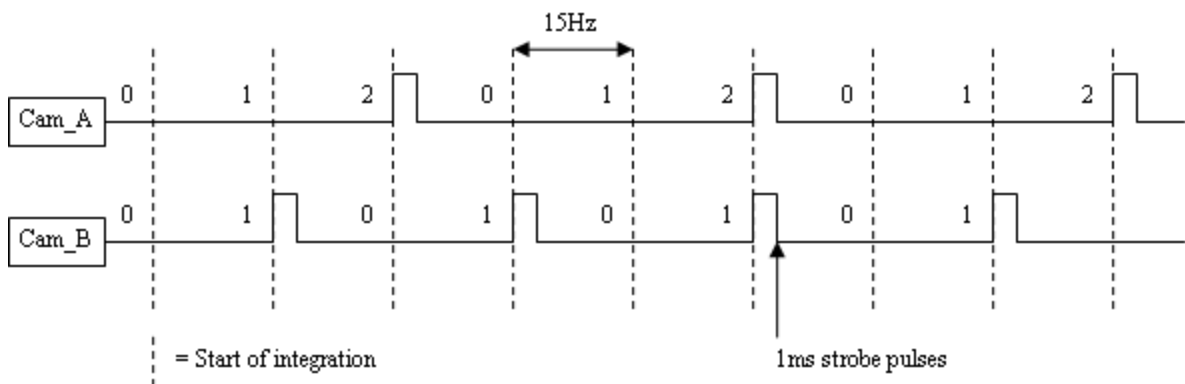


Figure 5.11: Example of multiple camera strobe pattern synchronization

#### Start the Camera

Using a separate instance of the FlyCap demo program for each camera, begin grabbing images at the frame rate specified above. Put the shutter in manual mode and set the shutter time to be the same for each camera.

#### Configure the Desired Pins to Output a Strobe

See [Example: Setting a GPIO Pin To Strobe](#) on page 1 for instructions on configuring each camera to output a 1ms pulse off a GPIO pin.

## Configure the Strobe Pattern Period

The programmable strobe pattern period is controlled by the *Count\_Period* field of the GPIO\_STRPAT\_CTRL register 0x110C (page 70). The valid values for *Count\_Period* are 1 – 16. By default (normal strobe mode), the *Count\_Period* is 1 and the camera strobes on every frame.

At the start of integration for each image, the period counter is incremented and the *Current\_Count* read-only field is updated. In the example above, Cam\_A has a period of three (3). *Current\_Count* therefore counts from 0 up to 2, then wraps around back to 0 to start the next period.

To configure the strobe periods for the two cameras in our example we need to set the *Count\_Period* by writing the following to register 0x110C:

(Cam\_A) 0x110C = 0x8000 0300

|      |      |      |      |       |      |       |      |        |
|------|------|------|------|-------|------|-------|------|--------|
| 8    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0     | 3    | 0     | 0    | Hex    |
| 1000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000  | 0011 | 0000  | 0000 | Binary |
| 0-7  |      | 8-15 |      | 16-23 |      | 24-31 |      | Bits   |

(Cam\_B) 0x110C = 0x8000 0200

|      |      |      |      |       |      |       |      |        |
|------|------|------|------|-------|------|-------|------|--------|
| 8    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0     | 2    | 0     | 0    | Hex    |
| 1000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000  | 0010 | 0000  | 0000 | Binary |
| 0-7  |      | 8-15 |      | 16-23 |      | 24-31 |      | Bits   |

Bit [0] indicates the Presence of the strobe pattern feature; a write to this bit is therefore a NoOp. Bits [19-23] control the *Count\_Period*, which is 3 for Cam\_A and 2 for Cam\_B.

Reading this register, depending on how quickly the read returns, should show the *Current\_Count* value cycling through its range of values: 0, 1, 2 for Cam\_A; and 0, 1 for Cam\_B.

## Define the Strobe Pattern

Following the example above, we want Cam\_A to strobe on the third frame only (*Current\_Count* = 2) and Cam\_B to strobe on the second frame only (*Current\_Count* = 1). To do this, we need to configure the *Enable\_Mask* in the GPIO\_STRPAT\_MASK\_PIN\_2 register 0x1138 (page 71).

In general, when the *Current\_Count* equals N the GPIO pin will only output a strobe if Bit [N] of the *Enable\_Mask* is set to '1'. By default, all of the bits in the *Enable\_Mask* are set to '1' (a read of 0x1138 would display 0x8000FFFF) so that the strobe occurs for every frame.

In our example above, we want Cam\_A to strobe when the *Current\_Count* equals 2. We therefore need to set Bit [2] of the *Enable\_Mask*, which is actually Bit [18] of the GPIO\_STRPAT\_MASK\_PIN\_2 register, to '1'. To ensure a strobe does not occur when *Current\_Count* is equal to 0 or 1, we need to set Bits [0-1] to '0'. We want Cam\_B to strobe when the count equals 1, so we need to set Bit [1] (Bit [17] of register 0x1138) to '1' and Bit [0] to '0'. Our register writes would therefore look like this:

(Cam\_A) 0x1138 = 0x8000 3FFF

|      |      |      |      |       |      |       |      |        |
|------|------|------|------|-------|------|-------|------|--------|
| 8    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 3     | F    | F     | F    | Hex    |
| 1000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0011  | 1111 | 1111  | 1111 | Binary |
| 0-7  | 8-15 |      |      | 16-23 |      | 24-31 |      | Bits   |

(Cam\_B) 0x1118 = 0x8000 7FFF

|      |      |      |      |       |      |       |      |        |
|------|------|------|------|-------|------|-------|------|--------|
| 8    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 7     | F    | F     | F    | Hex    |
| 1000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0111  | 1111 | 1111  | 1111 | Binary |
| 0-7  |      | 8-15 |      | 16-23 |      | 24-31 |      | Bits   |

At this point, the strobe pulses coming off each camera should look very similar to those in [\(page 65\)](#). If they are not aligned correctly, simply adjust the *Enable\_Mask* until the pulses are synchronized.

### Matching Strobe Pulses to Images

It may be useful to know whether a given image would have a strobe pulse associated with it. For example, the strobe may be used to turn on a small LED or lighting system that illuminates the scene for a specific image. It may be useful to know whether a grabbed image, which can be accessed in memory, is one that should be illuminated. In the same way, it is also useful to know at what point in the pattern an image is grabbed, which might allow the user to make various camera changes in anticipation of the next strobe.

The easiest way to accomplish this is to embed the value of the 32-bit GPIO\_STRPAT\_CTRL register 0x110C ([page 70](#)) into the image by setting Bit [24] of the FRAME\_INFO register 0x12F8 ([page 109](#)). This register allows the user to control the types of frame-specific information that are embedded into the first several pixels of the image.

Following the example above, we would therefore write the following for both cameras:

0x12F8 = 0x8000 0080

|      |      |      |      |       |      |       |      |        |
|------|------|------|------|-------|------|-------|------|--------|
| 8    | 0    | 0    | 0    | 0     | 0    | 8     | 0    | Hex    |
| 1000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000  | 0000 | 1000  | 0000 | Binary |
| 0-7  | 8-15 |      |      | 16-23 |      | 24-31 |      | Bits   |

Once this is done, the first four pixels (or 4 bytes of image data) represent the 32-bit (4-byte) value of the GPIO\_STRPAT\_CTRL register. From this, the application can parse the image data to look for the *Current\_Count* Bits [28-31] to determine whether or not the current image should have a strobe associated with it.

Following the example above, the following FlyCapture 2.0 API code snippet applies to Cam\_A. The snippet assumes an `Image` object `RawImage`, and that `strobePattern` is the only information being embedded in the image:

```
unsigned char* data;

unsigned char ucCurrentCount;

data = rawImage.GetData();
```

```

ucCurrentCount = data[3]; // Byte[4] or bits[28-31] of register
0x110C

if(ucCurrentCount == 2)
{
    //a strobe should have occurred for this image - Do something
}

```

#### 5.6.1.4 Strobe Signal Output Registers

This section describes the control and inquiry registers for the Strobe Signal functionality.

##### Inquiry Register for Strobe Output CSR Offset Addresses

The following register indicates the locations of the Strobe Output CSR registers. These offsets are relative to the base offset 0xFFFF F0F0 0000.

| Offset | Name                  | Field                         | Bit    | Description   |
|--------|-----------------------|-------------------------------|--------|---|
| 48Ch   | STROBE_OUTPUT_CSR_INQ | Strobe_ Output_Quadlet_Offset | [0-31] | Quadlet offset of the Strobe output signal CSRs from the base address of initial register space |

##### Current Strobe Output Register Offsets

(Bit values = 0: Not Available, 1: Available)

##### **Format:**

| Offset              | Name            | Field        | Bit    | Description                               |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------|---|
| 1300h               | STROBE_CTRL_INQ | Strobe_0_Inq | [0]    | Presence of strobe 0 signal               |
|                     |                 | Strobe_1_Inq | [1]    | Presence of strobe 1 signal               |
|                     |                 | Strobe_2_Inq | [2]    | Presence of strobe 2 signal               |
|                     |                 | Strobe_3_Inq | [3]    | Presence of strobe 3 signal               |
|                     |                 | -            | [4-31] | Reserved                                  |
| 1304h : 13FCh       | Reserved        |              |        |   |
| 1400h               | STROBE_0_INQ    | Presence_Inq | [0]    | Presence of this feature                  |
| 0: N/A 1: Available |                 |              | [1-3]  | Reserved                                  |
|                     |                 | ReadOut_Inq  | [4]    | Ability to read the value of this feature |
|                     |                 | On_Off_Inq   | [5]    | Ability to switch feature ON and OFF      |
|                     |                 | Polarity_Inq | [6]    | Ability to change signal polarity         |

| Offset       | Name         | Field                           | Bit     | Description  |
|--------------|--------------|---------------------------------|---------|--|
|              |              |                                 | [7]     | Reserved   |
|              |              | Min_Value                       | [8-19]  | Minimum value for this feature control   |
|              |              | Max_Value                       | [20-31] | Maximum value for this feature control   |
| 1404h        | STROBE_1_INQ | Same definition as Strobe_0_Inq |         |  |
| 1408h        | STROBE_2_INQ | Same definition as Strobe_0_Inq |         |  |
| 140Ch        | STROBE_3_INQ | Same definition as Strobe_0_Inq |         |  |
| 1410h : 14Ch | Reserved     |                                 |         |  |
| 1500h        | STROBE_0_CNT | Presence_Inq                    | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available  |
|              |              |                                 | [1-5]   | Reserved   |
|              |              | On_Off                          | [6]     | Write: ON or OFF this function<br>Read: read a status<br>0: OFF, 1: ON<br>If this bit = 0, other fields will be read only.   |
|              |              | Signal_Polarity                 | [7]     | Select signal polarity<br>If Polarity_Inq is "1":<br>- Write to change strobe output polarity<br>- Read to get strobe output polarity<br>If Polarity_Inq is "0":<br>- Read only<br>0: Low active output<br>1: High active output |
|              |              | Delay_Value                     | [8-19]  | Delay after start of exposure until the strobe signal asserts  |
|              |              | Duration_Value                  | [20-31] | Duration of the strobe signal<br>A value of 0 means de-assert at the end of exposure, if required.   |
| 1504h        | STROBE_1_CNT | Same definition as Strobe_0_Cnt |         |  |
| 1508h        | STROBE_2_CNT | Same definition as Strobe_0_Cnt |         |  |
| 150Ch        | STROBE_3_CNT | Same definition as Strobe_0_Cnt |         |  |
| 1510h-15FFh  | Reserved     |                                 |         |  |

GPIO\_STRPAT\_CTRL: 110Ch

This register provides control over a shared 4-bit counter with programmable period. When the *Current\_Count* equals N a GPIO pin will only output a strobe pulse if bit[N] of the GPIO\_STRPAT\_MASK\_PIN\_x register's *Enable\_Pin* field is set to '1'.

| Field         | Bit     | Description   |
|---------------|---------|---|
| Presence_Inq  | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available   |
|               | [1-18]  | Reserved  |
| Count_Period  | [19-23] | Controls the period of the strobe pattern<br>Valid values: 1..16  |
|               | [24-27] | Reserved  |
| Current_Count | [28-31] | Read-only<br><br>The value of the bit index defined in GPIO_x_STRPAT_MASK that will be used during the next image's strobe. <i>Current_Count</i> increments at the same time as the strobe start signal occurs. |

GPIO\_STRPAT\_MASK\_PIN 0: 1118h

This register defines the actual strobe pattern to be implemented by GPIO0 in conjunction with the *Count\_Period* defined in GPIO\_STRPAT\_CTRL register 110Ch ([page 70](#)).

For example, if *Count\_Period* is set to '3', bits 16-18 of the *Enable\_Mask* can be used to define a strobe pattern. An example strobe pattern might be bit 16=0, bit 17=0, and bit 18=1, which will cause a strobe to occur every three frames (when the *Current\_Count* is equal to 2).

**Format:**

| Field        | Bit     | Description   |
|--------------|---------|---|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available   |
|              | [1-15]  | Reserved  |
| Enable_Mask  | [16-31] | Bit field representing the strobe pattern used in conjunction with <i>Count_Period</i> in GPIO_STRPAT_CTRL<br><br>0: Do not output a strobe<br>1: Output a strobe |

GPIO\_STRPAT\_MASK\_PIN 1: 1128h

This register defines the actual strobe pattern to be implemented by GPIO1 in conjunction with the *Count\_Period* defined in GPIO\_STRPAT\_CTRL register 110Ch ([page 70](#)).

**Format:**

| Field        | Bit | Description              |
|--------------|-----|--------------------------|
| Presence_Inq | [0] | Presence of this feature |

| Field       | Bit     | Description   |
|-------------|---------|---|
|             |         | 0: N/A 1: Available   |
|             | [1-15]  | Reserved  |
| Enable_Mask | [16-31] | Bit field representing the strobe pattern used in conjunction with <i>Count_Period</i> in GPIO_STRPAT_CTRL<br><br>0: Do not output a strobe<br>1: Output a strobe |

### GPIO\_STRPAT\_MASK\_PIN\_2: 1138h

This register defines the actual strobe pattern to be implemented by GPIO2 in conjunction with the *Count\_Period* defined in GPIO\_STRPAT\_CTRL register 110Ch (page 70).

#### Format:

| Field        | Bit     | Description   |
|--------------|---------|---|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available   |
|              | [1-15]  | Reserved  |
| Enable_Mask  | [16-31] | Bit field representing the strobe pattern used in conjunction with <i>Count_Period</i> in GPIO_STRPAT_CTRL<br><br>0: Do not output a strobe<br>1: Output a strobe |

### GPIO\_XTRA: 1104h

The GPIO\_XTRA register controls when a strobe starts: relative to the start of integration (default) or relative to the time of an asynchronous trigger.

#### Format:

| Field        | Bit    | Description  |
|--------------|--------|--|
| Strobe_Start | [0]    | Current Mode<br>0: Strobe start is relative to start of integration (default)<br>1: Strobe start is relative to external trigger |
|              | [1-31] | Reserved   |

## 5.6.2 Serial Communication Using GPIO

The camera is capable of serial communications at baud rates up to 115.2 Kbps via the on-board serial port built into the camera's GPIO connector. The serial port uses TTL digital logic levels. If RS-232 signal levels are required, a level converter must be used to convert the TTL digital logic levels to RS-232 voltage levels. B&B Electronics (<http://www.bb-elec.com/>) part number 232LPTTL can be used for this conversion.

### 5.6.2.1 SIO Buffers

- Both the transmit and receive buffers are implemented as circular buffers that may exceed the 255 byte maximum specified by the *Buffer\_Size\_Inq* [24..31] field of the SERIAL\_

MODE\_REG register 70000h ([page 75](#)).

- The transmit buffer size is 512 B.
- The receive buffer size is 8 KB.
- Block reads and writes are both supported. Neither their length nor their address have to be quadlet aligned or divisible by 4.

### 5.6.2.2 Serial Output Transaction (Transmitting Data)

A general overview of the steps for a serial output transaction, where the camera is transmitting data to a receiving serial port, is as follows:

1. In TRANSMIT\_BUFFER\_STATUS\_CONTROL register 7000Ch ([page 75](#)), read the available data space of the current transmit buffer *TBUF\_ST* field.
2. Write characters to the SIO\_DATA\_REGISTER 70100h ([page 75](#)).
3. In TRANSMIT\_BUFFER\_STATUS\_CONTROL register 7000Ch, write the valid output data length to the *TBUF\_CNT* field to start transmit.
4. To output more characters, repeat step 1.

#### Example: Transmitting Characters to a PC

This example describes how to send four (4) characters from the camera to the serial port on a PC. Microsoft's HyperTerminal program (*Start Menu > All Programs > Accessories > Communications*) is used to display the characters received from the camera. The process detailed by the table below involves the user enabling transmit, verifying that the transmit buffer is ready, writing four characters to the transmit buffer via the data access registers and then verifying that the characters are ready before finally transmitting them.

| Step   | Action       | Register | Input / Expected Output  |
|--|--------------|----------|--|
| 1. Plug the camera in and start FlyCap.  |              |          |  |
| 2. Open the Camera Control Dialog and select the Register tab.   |              |          |  |
| 3. Get the current baud rate, character length setting, parity setting and stop bit setting.   | Get Register | 0x70000  | 0x060800FF <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0x06 = 19200bps</li> <li>• 0x08 = 8bit, no parity, 1 stop</li> <li>• 0xFF = 255 byte buffer</li> </ul> |
| 4. Open a HyperTerminal window and create a new connection, setting the COM Port Settings to match the current camera settings obtained in step 3. |              |          |  |
| 5. Enable the serial output (transmit).  | Set Register | 0x70004  | 0x40000000   |
| 6. Verify transmit buffer ready.   | Get Register | 0x70004  | 0x40800000   |
| 7. Send four (4) characters to the output buffer on the cam-   | Set Register | 0x70100  | 0x31323334 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ASCII = 1234</li> </ul>  |



| Step   | Action       | Register | Input / Expected Output  |
|--|--------------|----------|--|
| era.   |              |          |  |
| 8. Verify that the transmit buffer is currently storing 4 bytes worth of characters. | Get Register | 0x7000C  | 0xFF040000 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>0xFF = 255 bytes of buffer space remaining</li> <li>0x04 = 4 bytes currently stored and waiting to be transmitted</li> </ul> |
| 9. Send the characters from the output buffer to the PC's serial port.               | Set Register | 0x7000C  | 0xFF040000 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HyperTerminal should echo the characters "1234"</li> </ul>   |

To send more than four characters, either:

- Repeat steps 7 through 9 above, and send characters in sets of four using register 0x70100; or
- Do a block write of all the characters using registers 0x70104 – 0x701FF (see the FlyCapture API documentation for information on doing block transfers).

Although both types of writes to the transmit buffer may have to be quadlet aligned, the number of characters transmitted does not. Subsequent writes to the buffer will simply overwrite characters that were not transmitted during a previous transmit.

The actual transmit buffer size may be larger than that reported in step 3 above. See [SIO Buffers on page 71](#). When this is the case, the "buffer space remaining" that is reported in step 8 will not decrease until the actual buffer space remaining is less than 255 bytes.

### 5.6.2.3 Serial Input Transaction (Receiving Data)

A general overview of the steps for a serial input transaction, where the camera is receiving data from a transmitting serial port, is as follows:

1. In RECEIVE\_BUFFER\_STATUS\_CONTROL register 70008h ([page 75](#)), read the valid data size of current receive buffer *RBUF\_ST*.
2. Write the input data length to *RBUF\_CNT* field.
3. Read received characters from SIO\_DATA\_REGISTER 70100h ([page 75](#)).
4. To input more characters, repeat step 1.

#### Example: Receiving Characters from a PC

This example describes how to send four (4) characters from the PC to the camera's serial port. Microsoft's HyperTerminal program (*Start Menu > All Programs > Accessories > Communications*) is used to send the characters received from the camera. The process detailed by the table below involves the user enabling receive, having characters sent to the camera, checking to insure that the receive buffer is ready to be read, verifying that the characters have arrived and then having them transferred to the data access registers before they are read out.

| Step  | Action       | Register | Input / Expected Output   |
|---|--------------|----------|---|
| 1. Repeat steps 1 to 4 described in <i>Example: Transmitting Characters to a PC</i> on page 72  |              |          |   |
| 2. Enable the serial input (receive).   | Set Register | 0x70004  | 0x80000000  |
| 3. Verify no receive data framing errors.   | Get Register | 0x70004  | 0x80000000 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0x80040000 indicates a receive data framing error, possibly due to a noisy RS-232 line or incorrect baud rate/port settings.</li> <li>• 0x80020000 indicates a receive data parity error</li> </ul> |
| 4. Send four (4) characters to the input buffer on the camera. For test purposes, type the characters "ABCD" in the HyperTerminal window. |              |          | By default, characters will not be displayed in the HyperTerminal window. To echo typed characters to the screen, select File > Properties > Settings tab > ASCII Setup...  |
| 5. Verify that the receive data buffer is ready to be read.   | Get Register | 0x70004  | 0x80200000  |
| 6. Verify that the receive buffer is currently storing 4 bytes worth of characters, which are waiting to be read.                         | Get Register | 0x70008  | 0x04000000  |
| 7. Send four (4) characters from the input buffer to the data access register.  | Set Register | 0x70008  | 0x00040000  |
| 8. Verify that four (4) characters are ready to be read from the data access register.  | Get Register | 0x70008  | 0x00040000  |
| 9. Read the four (4) characters from the data access register.  | Get Register | 0x70100  | 0x41424344 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assumes input was "ABCD"</li> </ul>   |

To receive more than four characters, either:

- Repeat steps above, and receive characters in sets of four using register 70100h; or
- Do a block read of all of the characters using registers 0x70104 – 0x701FF. For example, if 12 characters were received (0x70008 = 0x0C000000), Set Register 0x70008 to 0x000C0000 and begin reading the bytes starting at 0x70104 (see the FlyCapture API documentation for information on doing block transfers).

Although both types of reads from the receive buffer may have to be quadlet aligned, the number of characters received does not. Extra characters read will simply be filled with 0's.

The actual receive buffer size may be larger than that reported in step 3 above. See [SIO Buffers on page 71](#)

#### 5.6.2.4 Transmitting and Receiving Data Simultaneously

Simultaneous transmitting and receiving of data can be achieved in a manner very similar to that illustrated by the previous two examples. The primary difference is that register 70004h must be set to 0xC0000000 to enable both transmit and receive. Once this has been done transmit and receive transactions can be interleaved as may be required by the application.

#### 5.6.2.5 SIO Control and Inquiry Registers

This section describes the control and inquiry registers for the serial input/output (SIO) control functionality.

##### Inquiry Register for SIO CSR Offset Addresses

The following register indicates the locations of the SIO CSR registers that are implemented by Point Grey IEEE-1394 cameras. These offsets are relative to the 1394 base offset 0xFFFF F0F0 0000.

| Offset | Name                | Field                      | Bit    | Description  |
|--------|---------------------|----------------------------|--------|--|
| 488h   | SIO_CONTROL_CSR_INQ | SIO_Control_Quadlet_Offset | [0-31] | Quadlet offset of the SIO control CSRs from the base address of initial register space |

##### Current SIO Register Offsets

At the time of this revision, the SIO offsets that would be derived using the quadlet offset information in *Inquiry Registers for SIO CSR Offset Addresses* ([page 75](#)) are as follows:



*The following table of SIO offsets is current as of the revision date. These offsets are subject to change without notice. Refer to Calculating Register Addresses using Quadlet Offsets [on page 126](#) for information on calculating the actual offsets of the following registers.*

(Bit values = 0: Not Available, 1: Available)

| Offset | Name            | Field     | Bit   | Description   |
|--------|-----------------|-----------|-------|---|
| 70000h | SERIAL_MODE_REG | Baud_Rate | [0-7] | <b>Baud rate setting</b><br>Write: Set baud rate<br>Read: Get current baud rate<br>0: 300bps<br>1: 600bps<br>2: 1200bps<br>3: 2400bps<br>4: 4800bps<br>5: 9600bps |

| Offset | Name                       | Field                   | Bit     | Description  |
|--------|----------------------------|-------------------------|---------|--|
|        |                            |                         |         | 6: 19200bps<br>7: 38400bps<br>8: 57600bps<br>9: 115200bps<br>10: 230400bp<br>Other values reserved   |
|        |                            | Char_<br>Length         | [8-15]  | Character length setting<br>Write: Set data length (must not be 0)<br>Read: Get data length<br>7: 7bits<br>8: 8bits<br>Other values reserved   |
|        |                            | Parity                  | [16-17] | <i>Parity setting</i><br>Write: Set parity<br>Read: Get current parity<br>0: None<br>1: Odd<br>2: Even   |
|        |                            | Stop_<br>Bit            | [18-19] | <i>Stop bits</i><br>Write: Set stop bit<br>Read: Get current stop bit<br>0: 1<br>1: 1.5<br>2: 2  |
|        |                            |                         | [20-23] | Reserved   |
|        |                            | Buffer_<br>Size_<br>Inq | [24-31] | <i>Buffer Size (Read-Only)</i><br>This field indicates the maximum size of the receive/transmit data buffer. See also <a href="#">SIO Bufferson page 71</a> .<br>If this value=1, <i>Buffer_Status_Control</i> and <i>SIO_Data_Register</i> characters 1-3 should be ignored.  |
| 70004h | SERIAL_<br>CONTROL_<br>REG | RE                      | [0]     | Receive enable<br>Indicates if the camera's ability to receive data has been enabled. Enabling this register causes the receive capability to be immediately started. Disabling this register causes the data in the buffer to be flushed. Read: Current status<br>Write: 0 Disable, 1: Enable   |
|        |                            | TE                      | [1]     | <i>Transmit enable</i><br>Indicates if the camera's ability to transmit data has been enabled. Enabling this register causes the transmit capability to be immediately started. Disabling this register causes data transmission to stop immediately, and any pending data is discarded.<br>Read: Current status<br>Write: 0: Disable, 1: Enable |

| Offset | Name                           | Field    | Bit     | Description   |
|--------|--------------------------------|----------|---------|---|
|        |                                | -        | [2-7]   | Reserved  |
|        | SERIAL_STATUS_REG              | TDRD     | [8]     | <i>Transmit data buffer ready (read only)</i><br>Indicates if the transmit buffer is ready to receive data from the user. It will be in the Ready state as long as <i>TBUF_ST</i> != 0 and <i>TE</i> is enabled.<br>Read only<br>0: Not ready, 1: Ready   |
|        |                                | -        | [9]     | Reserved  |
|        |                                | RDRD     | [10]    | <i>Receive data buffer ready (read only)</i><br>Indicates if the receive buffer is ready to be read by the user. It will be in the Ready state as long as <i>RBUF_ST</i> != 0 and <i>RE</i> is enabled.<br>Read only<br>0: Not ready, 1: Ready  |
|        |                                | -        | [11]    | Reserved  |
|        |                                | ORER     | [12]    | <i>Receive buffer over run error</i><br>Read: Current status<br>Write: 0: Clear flag, 1: Ignored  |
|        |                                | FER      | [13]    | <i>Receive data framing error</i><br>Read: Current status<br>Write: 0: Clear flag, 1: Ignored   |
|        |                                | PER      | [14]    | <i>Receive data parity error</i><br>Read: Current status<br>Write: 0: Clear flag, 1: Ignored  |
|        |                                | -        | [15-31] | Reserved  |
| 70008h | RECEIVE_BUFFER_STATUS_CONTROL  | RBUF_ST  | [0-8]   | <i>SIO receive buffer status</i><br>Indicates the number of bytes that have arrived at the camera but have yet to be queued to be read.<br>Read: Valid data size of current receive buffer<br>Write: Ignored  |
|        |                                | RBUF_CNT | [8-15]  | <i>SIO receive buffer control</i><br>Indicates the number of bytes that are ready to be read.<br>Read: Remaining data size for read<br>Write: Set input data size   |
|        |                                | -        | [16-31] | Reserved  |
| 7000Ch | TRANSMIT_BUFFER_STATUS_CONTROL | TBUF_ST  | [0-8]   | <i>SIO output buffer status</i><br>Indicates the minimum number of free bytes available to be filled in the transmit buffer. It will count down as bytes are written to any of the SIO_DATA_REGISTERS starting at 2100h. It will count up as bytes are actually transmitted after a write to <i>TBUF_CNT</i> . Although its maximum value is 255, the actual amount of available buffer space may be larger.<br>Read: Available data space of transmit buffer |

| Offset                | Name                    | Field    | Bit     | Description  |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|----------|---------|--|
|                       |                         |          |         | Write: Ignored   |
|                       |                         | TBUF_CNT | [8-15]  | <i>SIO output buffer control</i><br>Indicates the number of bytes that have been stored since it was last written to. Writing any value to <i>TBUF_CNT</i> will cause it to go to 0. Writing a number less than its value will cause that many bytes to be transmitted and the rest thrown away. Writing a number greater than its value will cause that many bytes to be written - its value being valid and the remainder being padding.<br>Read: Written data size to buffer<br>Write: Set output data size for transmit. |
|                       |                         | -        | [16-31] | Reserved   |
| 70010h<br>:<br>700FFh | Reserved                |          |         |  |
| 70100h                | SIO_DATA_REGISTER       | Char_0   | [0-7]   | <i>Character_0</i><br>Read: Read character from receive buffer. Padding data if data is not available.<br>Write: Write character to transmit buffer. Padding data if data is invalid.  |
|                       |                         | Char_1   | [8-16]  | <i>Character_1</i><br>Read: Read character from receive buffer+1. Padding data if data is not available.<br>Write: Write character to transmit buffer+1. Padding data if data is invalid.  |
|                       |                         | Char_2   | [17-23] | <i>Character_2</i><br>Read: Read character from receive buffer+2. Padding data if data is not available.<br>Write: Write character to transmit buffer+2. Padding data if data is invalid.  |
|                       |                         | Char_3   | [24-31] | <i>Character_3</i><br>Read: Read character from receive buffer+3. Padding data if data is not available.<br>Write: Write character to transmit buffer+3. Padding data if data is invalid.  |
| 70104h<br>:<br>701FFh | SIO_DATA_REGISTER_ALIAS |          | [0-31]  | Alias SIO_Data_Register area for block transfer.   |

### 5.6.3 Pulse Width Modulation (PWM)

When the *Pin\_Mode* field of GPIO\_CTRL\_PIN\_x register ([page 79](#)) is set to GPIO\_MODE\_4, pin x will output a specified number of pulses with programmable high and low duration.

The pulse is independent of integration or external trigger. There is only one real PWM signal source (i.e. two or more pins cannot simultaneously output different PWM's), but the pulse can appear on any of the GPIO pins.

The units of time are generally standardized to be in ticks of a 1.024 MHz clock. A separate GPIO pin may be designated as an "enable pin"; the PWM pulses continue only as long as the enable pin is held in a certain state (high or low).



*The pin configured to output a PWM signal (PWM pin) remains in the same state at the time the 'enable pin' is disabled. For example, if the PWM is in a high signal state when the 'enable pin' is disabled, the PWM pin remains in a high state. To re-set the pin signal, you must re-configure the PWM pin from GPIO\_Mode\_4 to GPIO\_Mode\_1.*

To configure the camera to generate an infinite number of PWM pulses, set the *Pwm\_Count* to 0xFF (255). To stop the infinite PWM pulse mode, set the *Pwm\_Count* to 0x00 (0), or take the GPIO pin out of PWM mode by setting *Pin\_Mode* to 0x00 (0).

#### Format of GPIO\_CTRL\_PIN\_x Register in GPIO\_Mode\_4

| Field        | Bit     | Description   |
|--------------|---------|---|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Value should be '1'   |
|              | [1-11]  | Reserved  |
| Pin_Mode     | [12-15] | Value should be '4'   |
| Pwm_Count    | [16-23] | Number of PWM pulses<br>Read: The current count; counts down the remaining pulses. After reaching zero, the count does not automatically reset to the previously-written value.<br>Write: Writing the number of pulses starts the PWM. Write 0xFF for infinite pulses. (Requires write of 0x00 before writing a different value.) |
|              | [24]    | Reserved  |
| En_Pin       | [25-27] | The GPIO pin to be used as a PWM enable i.e. the PWM continues as long as the En_Pin is held in a certain state (high or low).  |
|              | [28]    | Reserved  |
| Disable_Pol  | [29]    | Polarity of the PWM enable pin (En_Pin) that will disable the PWM. For example, if this bit is zero, the PWM will be disabled when the PWM enable pin goes low.   |
| En_En        | [30]    | 0: Disable enable pin (En_Pin) functionality<br>1: Enable En_Pin functionality  |
| Pwm_Pol      | [31]    | Polarity of the PWM signal<br>0: Low, 1: High   |

#### GPIO\_CTRL\_PIN\_0: 1110h

This register provides control over the first GPIO pin (Pin 0).

**Format:**

| Field        | Bit     | Description  |
|--------------|---------|--|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available  |
|              | [1-11]  | Reserved   |
| Pin_Mode     | [12-15] | Current GPIO_Mode<br>0: Input<br>1: Output<br>4: Pulse width modulation (PWM)  |
| Data         | [16-31] | Data field<br>GPIO_MODE_0 – bit 31 contains value<br>GPIO_MODE_1 – bit 31 contains value<br>GPIO_MODE_4 – see <i>Pulse Width Modulation</i> on page 78 |

GPIO XTRA PIN 0: 1114h

This register contains mode specific data for the first GPIO pin (Pin 0). Units are ticks of a 1.024MHz clock.

**Format:**

| Field           | Bit     | Description  |
|-----------------|---------|--|
| Mode_Specific_1 | [0-15]  | GPIO_MODE_4: Low period of PWM pulse (if Pwm_Pol = 0)  |
| Mode_Specific_2 | [16-31] | GPIO_MODE_4: High period of PWM pulse (if Pwm_Pol = 0) |

GPIO CTRL PIN 1: 1120h

This register provides control over the second GPIO pin (Pin 1).

**Format:**

| Field        | Bit     | Description  |
|--------------|---------|--|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available  |
|              | [1-11]  | Reserved   |
| Pin_Mode     | [12-15] | Current GPIO_Mode<br>0: Input<br>1: Output<br>4: Pulse width modulation (PWM)  |
| Data         | [16-31] | Data field<br>GPIO_MODE_0 – bit 31 contains value<br>GPIO_MODE_1 – bit 31 contains value<br>GPIO_MODE_4 – see <i>Pulse Width Modulation</i> on page 78 |

GPIO XTRA PIN 1: 1124h

This register contains mode specific data for the second GPIO pin (Pin 1). Units are ticks of a 1.024MHz clock.



**Format:**

| Field           | Bit     | Description  |
|-----------------|---------|--|
| Mode_Specific_1 | [0-15]  | GPIO_MODE_4: Low period of PWM pulse (if Pwm_Pol = 0)  |
| Mode_Specific_2 | [16-31] | GPIO_MODE_4: High period of PWM pulse (if Pwm_Pol = 0) |

GPIO\_CTRL\_PIN\_2: 1130h

This register provides control over the third GPIO pin.

**Format:**

| Field        | Bit     | Description  |
|--------------|---------|--|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available  |
|              | [1-11]  | Reserved   |
| Pin_Mode     | [12-15] | Current GPIO_Mode<br>0: Input<br>1: Output<br>4: Pulse width modulation (PWM)  |
| Data         | [16-31] | Data field<br>GPIO_MODE_0 – bit 31 contains value<br>GPIO_MODE_1 – bit 31 contains value<br>GPIO_MODE_4 – see <i>Pulse Width Modulation</i> on page 78 |

GPIO\_XTRA\_PIN\_2: 1134h

This register contains mode specific data for the third GPIO pin. Units are ticks of a 1.024MHz clock.

**Format:**

| Field           | Bit     | Description  |
|-----------------|---------|--|
| Mode_Specific_1 | [0-15]  | GPIO_MODE_4: Low period of PWM pulse (if Pwm_Pol = 0)  |
| Mode_Specific_2 | [16-31] | GPIO_MODE_4: High period of PWM pulse (if Pwm_Pol = 0) |

GPIO\_CTRL\_PIN\_3: 1140h

This register provides control over the fourth GPIO pin.

**Format:**

| Field        | Bit     | Description   |
|--------------|---------|---|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available                               |
|              | [1-11]  | Reserved  |
| Pin_Mode     | [12-15] | Current GPIO_Mode<br>0: Input<br>1: Output<br>4: Pulse width modulation (PWM) |
| Data         | [16-31] | Data field<br>GPIO_MODE_0 – bit 31 contains value                             |

| Field | Bit | Description   |
|-------|-----|---|
|       |     | GPIO_MODE_1 – bit 31 contains value<br>GPIO_MODE_4 – see <i>Pulse Width Modulation</i> on page 78 |

### GPIO\_XTRA\_PIN\_3: 1144h

This register contains mode specific data for the fourth GPIO pin. Units are ticks of a 1.024MHz clock.

#### Format:

| Field           | Bit     | Description  |
|-----------------|---------|--|
| Mode_Specific_1 | [0-15]  | GPIO_MODE_4: Low period of PWM pulse (if Pwm_Pol = 0)  |
| Mode_Specific_2 | [16-31] | GPIO_MODE_4: High period of PWM pulse (if Pwm_Pol = 0) |

## 5.7 On-Camera Frame Buffer

The camera has 32MB of memory that can be used for temporary image storage. This may be useful in cases such as:

- Retransmission of an image is required due to data loss or corruption.
- Multiple camera systems where there is insufficient bandwidth to capture images in the desired configuration.

All images pass through the frame buffer mechanism. This introduces relatively little delay in the system because the camera does not wait for a full image to arrive in the buffer before starting transmission but rather lags only a few lines behind.

The user can cause images to accumulate in the frame buffer by enabling the *Image\_Buffer\_Ctrl* bit of IMAGE\_RETRANSMIT register 634h (page 83). This effectively disables the transmission of images in favor of accumulating them in the frame buffer. The user is then required to use the remaining elements of the interface to cause the transmission of the images.

The buffer system is circular in nature, storing only the last 32 MB worth of image data. The number of images that this accommodates depends on the currently configured image size.

The standard user interaction involves the following steps:

1. **Configure the imaging mode.**

This first step involves configuring the format, mode and frame rate in which the camera will acquire images. This can be done by either directly manipulating the registers or using the higher level functionality associated with the software library being used. Depending on the software package, this may involve going so far as to configure the camera, perform bandwidth negotiation and grab an image. In cases where bandwidth is restricted, the user will want to disable transmission and free the bandwidth after the camera is configured.

2. **Enable frame buffer accumulation**

The second step involves enabling the *Image\_Buffer\_Ctrl* bit of register 634h. Enabling this bit results in images being accumulated in the frame buffer rather than immediately being transmitted.

3. **Negotiate bandwidth with the camera**

Having accumulated some number of images on the camera, bandwidth will have to be

renegotiated if it has not been done already. In most cases, this will involve effectively starting the camera in the imaging mode configured in step (1).

4. **Disable isochronous transmission and enable buffered image transfer**

To transfer buffered images, the *ISO\_EN / Continuous Shot* field of register 614h must be disabled, and the *Transfer\_Data\_Select* field of register 634h set to 1.

5. **Transmit images off of the camera**

The final step involves poking the *ONE\_SHOT/MULTI\_SHOT* register 61Ch in order to cause the camera to transmit one or more images from the frame buffer over the data interface.

Although it is possible to repeatedly transmit the same image, there is no way to access images that are older than the last image transmitted.

Whether by enabling trigger or disabling isochronous data, switching out of a free running mode leaves the last image transmitted in an undefined state.

The frame buffer is volatile memory that is erased after power cycling. To store images on the camera after power cycling, use [flash memory \(page 27\)](#). Accessing flash memory is significantly slower than accessing the frame buffer, and storage is limited.

### IMAGE\_RETRANSMIT: 634h

This register provides an interface to the camera's frame buffer functionality.

Transmitting buffered data is available when *ISO\_EN* = 0. (See [ISO\\_EN / CONTINUOUS\\_SHOT: 614h on page 45.](#)) Either *One\_shot* or *Multi\_shot* can be used to transmit buffered data when *Transfer\_Data\_Select* = 1. (See [ONE\\_SHOT / MULTI\\_SHOT: 61Ch on page 45.](#)) *Multi\_shot* is used for transmitting one or more (as specified by *Count\_Number*) buffered images. *One\_shot* is used for retransmission of the last image from the retransmit buffer.

Image data is stored in a circular image buffer when *Image\_Buffer\_Ctrl* = 1. If the circular buffer overflows, the oldest image in the buffer is overwritten.

Transmitted data is always stored in the retransmit buffer. If a last or previous image does not exist, (for example, an image has not been acquired since a video format or mode change), the camera still transmits an image from the retransmit buffer, but its contents are undefined.

The image buffer is initialized when *Image\_Buffer\_Ctr* is written to '1'. Changing the video format, video mode, image\_size, or color\_coding causes the image buffer to be initialized and *Max\_Num\_Images* to be updated.

#### **Format:**

| Field                | Bit   | Description  |
|----------------------|-------|--|
| Image_Buffer_Ctrl    | [0]   | Image Buffer On/Off Control<br>0: OFF 1: ON  |
| Transfer_Data_Select | [1]   | Transfer data path<br>0: Live data 1: Buffered image data<br>Ignored if <i>ISO_EN</i> =1 |
|                      | [2-7] | Reserved   |

| Field            | Bit     | Description   |
|------------------|---------|---|
| Max_Num_Images   | [8-19]  | Maximum number of images that can be stored in the current video format. Must be greater than zero.<br>This field is read only. |
| Number_of_Images | [20-31] | The number of images currently in buffer.<br>This field is read only.   |

### 5.7.1 Retransmitting an Image in External Trigger Mode

There are occasions where it might be beneficial to retransmit an image when in an external trigger mode. Having configured the camera to be running in an external trigger mode, the user can cause the camera to retransmit an image by doing the following:

1. Read the current state of the **IMAGE\_RETRANSMIT** register 634h:

|      |      |             |
|------|------|-------------|
| Read | 634h | 00 07 00 00 |
|------|------|-------------|

Reading register 634h indicates that the frame buffer mechanism is currently disabled, and in the current imaging mode, the system is capable of storing up to 7 images.

2. Enable image hold:

|       |      |             |
|-------|------|-------------|
| Write | 634h | 80 07 00 00 |
|-------|------|-------------|

Setting bit 0 of register 634h to 1 enables images to accumulate in the frame buffer.

3. Enable buffered image transfer:

|       |      |             |
|-------|------|-------------|
| Write | 634h | C0 07 00 00 |
|-------|------|-------------|

Setting bit 1 of register 634h to 1 enables transfer of buffered image data.

4. Retransmit the last image:

|       |      |             |
|-------|------|-------------|
| Write | 61Ch | 80 00 00 00 |
|-------|------|-------------|

Setting bit 0 of register 61Ch to 1 causes the last image to be retransmitted.

5. Disable buffered image transfer:

|       |      |             |
|-------|------|-------------|
| Write | 634h | 00 07 00 00 |
|-------|------|-------------|

Writing 0 to bits 0 and 1 of register 634h disables buffered image hold and transfer, and returns the camera to normal operation.

## 5.7.2 Storing images for later transmission

Again, assuming the camera is configured to run in an external trigger mode:

### 1. Read the current state of register 634h:

|      |      |             |
|------|------|-------------|
| Read | 634h | 00 07 00 00 |
|------|------|-------------|

Again, this value indicates that the frame buffer mechanism is currently disabled, and in the current imaging mode the system is capable of storing up to 7 images.

### 2. Enable hold image mode and buffer data transfer:

|       |      |             |
|-------|------|-------------|
| Write | 634h | C0 07 00 00 |
|-------|------|-------------|

Setting bits 0 and 1 of register 634h enables image buffer hold and transfer, resulting in images being accumulated in the frame buffer for later transmission.

### 3. Acquire 4 images:

|       |      |             |
|-------|------|-------------|
| Write | 62Ch | 80 00 00 00 |
| Write | 62Ch | 80 00 00 00 |
| Write | 62Ch | 80 00 00 00 |
| Write | 62Ch | 80 00 00 00 |
| Read  | 634h | C0 07 00 04 |

Writing to software trigger register 62Ch 4 times causes 4 images to accumulate in the frame buffer. The last 12 bits of register 634h will now indicate that there are 4 images in the frame buffer.

### 4. Transmit two images:

|       |      |             |
|-------|------|-------------|
| Write | 61Ch | 80 00 00 00 |
| Write | 61Ch | 80 00 00 00 |
| Read  | 634h | C0 07 00 02 |

Writing 1 to bit 0 of register 61Ch results in a single image being transmitted and the number of images available being decremented by one. After transmitting two images, a subsequent read of the register indicates that there are two images left.

## 5.8 Test Pattern

The camera is capable of outputting continuous static images for testing and development purposes. The test pattern image is inserted into the imaging pipeline immediately prior to the transfer to the on-board FIFO, and is therefore not subject to changes in hue, saturation, sharpness, white balance or gamma.



*Enabling raw Bayer output when operating in a monochrome data format [\(page 48\)](#) produces an image shift effect in the test pattern.*

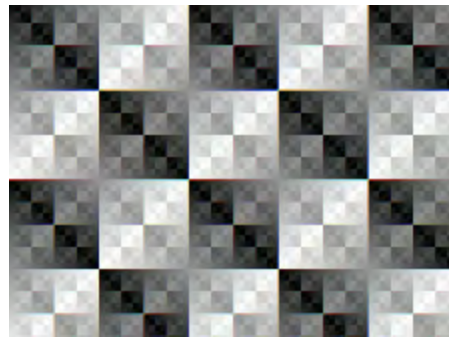


Figure 5.12: Test pattern sample image

### TEST\_PATTERN: 104Ch

#### Format:

| Field          | Bit    | Description  |
|----------------|--------|--|
| Presence_Inq   | [0]    | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A, 1: Available           |
|                | [1-30] | Reserved   |
| Test_Pattern_1 | [31]   | Value<br>0: Disable test pattern<br>1: Enable test pattern |

## 6 Imaging Parameters and Control

### 6.1 Brightness

The camera supports manual brightness control using BRIGHTNESS register 800h ([page 87](#)). Brightness, also known as offset, controls the level of black in an image.

**BRIGHTNESS: 800h**



*Formulas for converting the fixed point (relative) values to floating point (absolute) values are not provided. Users wishing to work with real-world values should refer to the Absolute Value CSRs section of the Appendix ([page 151](#)).*

**Format:**

| Field        | Bit     | Description   |
|--------------|---------|---|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A, 1: Available  |
| Abs_Control  | [1]     | Absolute value control<br>0: Control with the value in the Value field<br>1: Control with the value in the Absolute value CSR.<br>If this bit = 1, the value in the Value field is read-only.                     |
|              | [2-4]   | Reserved  |
| One_Push     | [5]     | One push auto mode (controlled automatically by camera only once)<br>Write: 1: Begin to work (self-cleared after operation)<br>Read: 0: Not in operation, 1: In operation<br>If A_M_Mode = 1, this bit is ignored |
| ON_OFF       | [6]     | Write: ON or OFF for this feature<br>Read: read a status<br>0: OFF, 1: ON<br>If this bit = 0, other fields will be read only  |
| A_M_Mode     | [7]     | Write: set the mode<br>Read: read a current mode<br>0: Manual, 1: Automatic   |
|              | [8-19]  | Reserved  |
| Value        | [20-31] | Value.<br>A write to this value in 'Auto' mode will be ignored.   |

#### 6.1.1 Example: Setting Brightness Using the FlyCapture API

The following FlyCapture 2.0 code snippet adjusts brightness to 0.5% using the C++ interface. The snippet assumes a `Camera` object `cam`.

```
//Declare a Property struct.  
  
Property prop;  
  
//Define the property to adjust.  
  
prop.type = BRIGHTNESS;  
  
//Ensure the property is set up to use absolute value control.  
  
prop.absControl = true;  
  
//Set the absolute value of brightness to 0.5%.  
  
prop.absValue = 0.5;  
  
//Set the property.  
  
error = cam.SetProperty( &prop );
```

## 6.2 Shutter

The camera supports automatic, manual and one-push control of the CCD shutter time. Refer to the *Specifications* section for supported shutter time ranges. Shutter times are scaled by the divider of the basic frame rate. For example, dividing the frame rate by two (e.g. 15 FPS to 7.5 FPS) causes the maximum shutter time to double (e.g. 66ms to 133ms).



*The terms “integration” and “exposure” are often used interchangeably with “shutter”.*

The time between the end of shutter for consecutive frames will always be constant. However, if the shutter time is continually changing (e.g. shutter is in Auto mode being controlled by Auto Exposure), the time between the beginning of consecutive integrations will change. If the shutter time is constant, the time between integrations will also be constant.

The camera continually exposes and reads image data off of the sensor under the following conditions:

1. The camera is powered up (see *Camera Power*); **and**
2. The camera is not in asynchronous trigger mode. When in async trigger mode, the camera simply clears the sensor and does not read the data off the sensor.

The camera continues to expose images even when isochronous data transfer is disabled and images are not being streamed to the PC (See [ISO\\_EN / CONTINUOUS\\_SHOT: 614h on page 45.](#)). The camera continues exposing images even when ISO is off in order to keep things such as the auto exposure algorithm (if enabled) running. This is done to ensure that when a user starts requesting images (ISO turned on), the first image received is properly exposed.



When operating in free-running mode, changes to the shutter value take effect with the next captured image, or the one after next. Changes to shutter in asynchronous trigger mode generally take effect on the next trigger.

For more information about the timing of property settings, see [When Camera Property Settings Take Effect on page 43](#).

## 6.2.1 Extended Shutter Times

The maximum shutter time can be extended beyond the normal shutter range by setting the `ON_OFF` bit [6] of the `FRAME_RATE` register 0x83C ([page 38](#)) to zero (OFF). Once the `FRAME_RATE` is turned off, you should see the `Max_Value` of the `ABS_VAL_SHUTTER` register ([page 152](#)) increase.



*The longest possible shutter times are available only when operating the camera in Format\_7 Mode\_3 or Format\_7 Mode\_8 ([page 37](#)).*



*The maximum extended shutter time reported by the `SHUTTER_INQ` register 51Ch ([page 140](#)) is capped at 4095 (0xFFFF), the maximum value allowed by the `Max_Value` field of this register. Use the `Max_Value` of the `ABS_VAL_SHUTTER` register ([page 152](#)) to determine the maximum shutter.*

### Related Knowledge Base Articles

| ID  | Title   | URL  |
|-----|---|--|
| 166 | Extended shutter mode operation for IIDC-compliant Point Grey Imaging Products. | <a href="http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=166">www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=166</a> |

### Related Resources

| Title  | Link                              |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| FlyCapture SDK <i>ExtendedShutterEx</i> sample program | <a href="#">ExtendedShutterEx</a> |

### SHUTTER: 81Ch

This register has three states:

| State      | Description  |
|------------|--|
| Manual/Abs | The shutter value is set by the user via the <code>ABS_VAL_SHUTTER</code> register ( <a href="#">page 152</a> ). The <code>Value</code> field becomes read only and reflects the converted value of the <code>ABS_VAL_SHUTTER</code> register. |
| Manual     | The user sets the shutter value via the <code>Value</code> field - the <code>ABS_VAL_SHUTTER</code> register becomes read only and contains the current shutter time.  |
| Auto       | The shutter value is set by the auto exposure controller (if enabled) ( <a href="#">page 92</a> ). Both the <code>Value</code> field and the <code>ABS__VAL_SHUTTER</code> register become read only.  |

### Converting fixed-point values to absolute values

The fixed-point (relative) values reported by this register can be converted to absolute values based on the following chart:

| Fixed-point Value Range | Equivalent Absolute Value Unit | Equivalent Absolute Value Range |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 to 1024               | 10 us                          | 0.01 ms to 10.24 ms             |
| 1025 to 1536            | 20 us                          | 10.26 ms to 20.48 ms            |
| 1537 to 2048            | 40 us                          | 20.52 to 40.96 ms               |
| 2049 to 2560            | 80 us                          | 41.04 ms to 81.92 ms            |
| ...                     | ...                            | ...                             |

The chart above can be expressed in terms of the following formula:

If fixed value  $\leq 1024$ :

$$absolute\_value = 10\text{ us} * fixed\_value$$

Else:

$$absolute\_value = 10\text{ us} * (512 + fixed\_value \% 512) * (2^{((fixed\_value/512) - 1)})$$

#### Format:

| Field        | Bit     | Description   |
|--------------|---------|---|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A, 1: Available  |
| Abs_Control  | [1]     | Absolute value control<br>0: Control with the value in the <i>Value</i> field<br>1: Control with the value in the Absolute value CSR.<br>If this bit = 1, the value in the <i>Value</i> field is ignored.         |
|              | [2-4]   | Reserved  |
| One_Push     | [5]     | One push auto mode (controlled automatically by camera only once)<br>Write: 1: Begin to work (self-cleared after operation)<br>Read: 0: Not in operation, 1: In operation<br>If A_M_Mode = 1, this bit is ignored |
| ON_OFF       | [6]     | Write: ON or OFF for this feature<br>Read: read a status<br>0: OFF, 1: ON<br>If this bit = 0, other fields will be read only  |
| A_M_Mode     | [7]     | Write: set the mode<br>Read: read a current mode<br>0: Manual, 1: Automatic   |
| High_Value   | [8-19]  | Upper 4 bits of the shutter value available only in extended shutter mode (outside of specification).   |
| Value        | [20-31] | Value.<br>A write to this value in 'Auto' mode will be ignored.   |

## 6.2.2 Example: Setting Shutter Using the FlyCapture API

The following FlyCapture 2.0 code snippet adjusts the shutter speed to 20 ms using the C++ interface. The snippet assumes a `Camera` object `cam`.

```
//Declare a Property struct.  
  
Property prop;  
  
//Define the property to adjust.  
  
prop.type = SHUTTER;  
  
//Ensure the property is on.  
  
prop.onOff = true;  
  
//Ensure auto-adjust mode is off.  
  
prop.autoManualMode = false;  
  
//Ensure the property is set up to use absolute value control.  
  
prop.absControl = true;  
  
//Set the absolute value of shutter to 20 ms.  
  
prop.absValue = 20;  
  
//Set the property.  
  
error = cam.SetProperty( &prop );
```

## 6.3 Gain

The camera supports automatic and one-push gain modes. The A/D converter provides a PxGA gain stage (white balance / preamp) and VGA gain stage. The main VGA gain stage is available to the user, and is variable up to 24 dB in steps of 0.046 dB. On ZBR2-GEHD-50S5C models, gain is configurable in steps of 0.36 dB.

For information about timing changes to the gain setting, see *When Camera Property Settings Take Effect* on [page 43](#).



*Increasing gain also increases image noise, which can affect image quality. To increase image intensity, try adjusting the lens aperture (iris) and shutter time ([page 88](#)) first.*

### GAIN: 820h

This register has three states:

| State      | Description   |
|------------|---|
| Manual/Abs | The gain value is set by the user via the ABS_VAL_GAIN register ( <a href="#">page 152</a> ). The <i>Value</i> field becomes read only and reflects the converted absolute value. |
| Manual     | The gain value is set by the <i>Value</i> field: the ABS_VAL_GAIN register becomes read only and contains the current gain.   |
| Auto       | The gain value is set by the auto exposure controller (if enabled) ( <a href="#">page 92</a> ): both the <i>Value</i> field and the ABS_VAL_GAIN register become read only.       |



*Formulas for converting the fixed point (relative) values to floating point (absolute) values are not provided. Users wishing to work with real-world values should refer to the Absolute Value CSRs section of the Appendix ([page 151](#)).*

#### Format:

Same format as [BRIGHTNESS: 800h on page 87](#)

### 6.3.1 Example: Setting Gain Using the FlyCapture API

The following FlyCapture 2.0 code snippet adjusts gain to 10.5 dB using the C++ interface, and assumes a `Camera` object `cam`.

```
//Declare a Property struct.

Property prop;

//Define the property to adjust.

prop.type = GAIN;

//Ensure auto-adjust mode is off.

prop.autoManualMode = false;

//Ensure the property is set up to use absolute value control.

prop.absControl = true;

//Set the absolute value of gain to 10.5 dB.

prop.absValue = 10.5;

//Set the property.

error = cam.SetProperty( &prop );
```

## 6.4 Auto Exposure

Auto exposure (AE) allows the camera to automatically control shutter and/or gain in order to achieve a specific average image intensity. Additionally, users can specify the range of allowed

values used by the auto-exposure algorithm by using the AUTO\_EXPOSURE\_RANGE (page 93), AUTO\_SHUTTER\_RANGE (page 94) and AUTO\_GAIN\_RANGE (page 94) registers.

The AUTO\_EXPOSURE register allows the user to control the camera system's automatic exposure algorithm. It has three useful states:

| State                            | Description   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Off                              | Control of the exposure is achieved via setting both the SHUTTER (page 89) and GAIN (page 91) registers. This mode is achieved by setting the ON_OFF field to be 0. An equivalent mode can be achieved by setting the A_M_Mode fields in the SHUTTER and GAIN registers to 0 (Manual).  |
| ON<br>Manual Exposure<br>Control | The camera automatically modifies the SHUTTER and GAIN registers to try and match the average image intensity to the value written to the Value field. This mode is achieved by setting the A_M_Mode value of the AUTO_EXPOSURE register to 0 (manual) and either/both of the A_M_Mode values for the SHUTTER and GAIN registers to 1 (Auto). |
| ON<br>Auto Exposure<br>Control   | The camera modifies the Value field in order to produce an image that is visually pleasing. This mode is achieved by setting the A_M_MODE for all three of the AUTO_EXPOSURE, SHUTTER and GAIN registers to 1 (Auto). In this mode, the Value field reflects the average image intensity.   |

Auto exposure can only control the exposure when the SHUTTER and/or GAIN registers have their A\_M\_Mode bits set. If only one of the registers is in "auto" mode then the auto exposure controller attempts to control the image intensity using just that one register. If both of these registers are in "auto" mode the auto exposure controller uses a shutter-before-gain heuristic to try and maximize the signal-to-noise ratio by favoring a longer shutter time over a larger gain value.

In absolute mode, an exposure value (EV) of 0 indicates the average intensity of the image is 18% of 1023 (18% gray).



*Formulas for converting the fixed point (relative) values to floating point (absolute) values are not provided. Users wishing to work with real-world values should refer to the Absolute Value CSRs section of the Appendix (page 151).*

The auto exposure algorithm is only applied to the active region of interest, and not the entire array of active pixels.

### AUTO\_EXPOSURE: 804h

#### **Format:**

Same format as SHUTTER: 81Ch on page 89.

### AUTO\_EXPOSURE\_RANGE: 1088h

Specifies the range of allowed exposure values to be used by the automatic exposure controller when in auto mode. Fixed point (relative) values must be specified. Do not specify absolute values.

#### **Format:**

| Field        | Bit | Description              |
|--------------|-----|--------------------------|
| Presence_Inq | [0] | Presence of this feature |

| Field     | Bit     | Description         |
|-----------|---------|---------------------|
|           |         | 0: N/A 1: Available |
|           | [1-7]   | Reserved            |
| Min_Value | [8-19]  | Lower bound         |
| Max_Value | [20-31] | Upper bound         |

### AUTO SHUTTER RANGE: 1098h

Allows the user to specify the range of shutter values to be used by the automatic exposure controller - generally some subset of the entire shutter range described by SHUTTER\_INQ register 51Ch ([page 140](#)). Fixed point (relative) values must be specified. Do not specify absolute values.

#### **Format:**

| Field          | Bit     | Description   |
|----------------|---------|---|
| Presence_Inq   | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available   |
|                | [1-5]   | Reserved  |
| Min_Dark_Noise | [6]     | Minimizes dark current noise with extended shutter times.<br>This feature is currently experimental.<br>0: Disable dark noise minimization<br>1: Enable dark noise minimization |
|                | [7]     | Reserved  |
| Min_Value      | [8-19]  | Lower bound   |
| Max_Value      | [20-31] | Upper bound   |



*The actual range used is further restricted to match the current grab mode (see SHUTTER register 81Ch [on page 89](#) for the list of ranges).*

### AUTO GAIN RANGE: 10A0h

Allows the user to specify the range of gain values to be used by the automatic exposure controller - generally some subset of the entire gain range described by GAIN\_INQ register 520h ([page 140](#)).

#### **Format:**

| Field        | Bit   | Description   |
|--------------|-------|---|
| Presence_Inq | [0]   | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available   |
|              | [1-5] | Reserved  |
| ON_OFF       | [6]   | Write: ON or OFF for this feature<br>Read: read a status<br>0: OFF 1: ON<br>If this bit = 0, other fields will be read only |

| Field     | Bit     | Description |
|-----------|---------|-------------|
|           | [7]     | Reserved    |
| Min_Value | [8-19]  | Lower bound |
| Max_Value | [20-31] | Upper bound |

### AE ROI: 1A70 – 1A74h

This register allows the user to specify a region of interest within the full image to be used for both auto exposure and white balance. The ROI position and size are relative to the transmitted image. If the request ROI is of zero width or height, the entire image will be used.

#### Format:

| Offset             | Name                     | Field        | Bit     | Description  |
|--------------------|--------------------------|--------------|---------|--|
| 1A70h              | AE_ROI_CTRL              | Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: Not available<br>1: Available   |
|                    |                          |              | [1-5]   | Reserved   |
|                    |                          | ON_OFF       | [6]     | Write: ON or OFF for this feature<br>Read: read a status<br>0: OFF, 1: ON<br>If this bit = 0, other fields will be read only |
|                    |                          |              | [7-31]  | Reserved   |
| 1A74h              | AE_ROI_OFFSET            |              | [0-31]  | Quadlet offset of the base address for the ROI CSR's   |
| Base+0h<br>(1C40h) | AE_ROI_UNIT_POSITION_INQ | Hposunit     | [0-15]  | Horizontal units for position  |
|                    |                          | Vposunit     | [16-31] | Vertical units for position  |
| Base+4h<br>(1C44h) | AE_ROI_UNIT_SIZE_INQ     | Hunit        | [0-15]  | Horizontal units for size  |
|                    |                          | Vunit        | [16-31] | Vertical units for size  |
| Base+8h<br>(1C48h) | AE_ROI_POSITION          | Left         | [0-15]  | Left position of ROI   |
|                    |                          | Top          | [16-31] | Top position of ROI  |
| Base+Ch<br>(1C4Ch) | AE_ROI_SIZE              | Width        | [0-15]  | Width of ROI   |
|                    |                          | Height       | [16-31] | Height of ROI  |

## 6.4.1 Example Setting Auto Exposure Using the FlyCapture2 API

The following FlyCapture 2.0 code snippet adjusts auto exposure to -3.5 EV using the C++ interface. The snippet assumes a `Camera` object `cam`.

```
//Declare a Property struct.
```

```
Property prop;
```

```
//Define the property to adjust.

prop.type = AUTO_EXPOSURE;

//Ensure the property is on.

prop.onOff = true;

//Ensure auto-adjust mode is off.

prop.autoManualMode = false;

//Ensure the property is set up to use absolute value control.

prop.absControl = true;

//Set the absolute value of auto exposure to -3.5 EV.

prop.absValue = -3.5;

//Set the property.

error = cam.SetProperty( &prop );
```

## 6.5 Gamma and Lookup Table

The camera supports gamma and lookup table (LUT) functionality. CCD manufacturers strive to make the transfer characteristics of CCDs inherently linear, which means that as the number of photons hitting the imaging sensor increases, the resulting image intensity increases are linear. Gamma can be used to apply a non-linear mapping of the images produced by the camera. Gamma is applied after analog-to-digital conversion and is controlled using the GAMMA register 0x818 ([page 96](#)). Gamma is available in all pixel formats. Gamma values between 0.5 and 1 result in decreased brightness effect, while values between 1 and 4 produce an increased brightness effect. By default, Gamma is ON and has a value of 1.25. To obtain a linear response, set gamma to 1, or turn gamma off.

Alternatively, the camera has a 9-bit input lookup table that produces a 9-bit output. The LUT has two banks that the user can select between. In RGB and YUV pixel formats, the LUT has three channels for red, green, and blue. In monochrome and raw formats, there is a single channel, regardless of color or monochrome sensor. The LUT is available only in 8 bit/pixel formats.

### GAMMA: 818h

This register provides a mechanism to control the function used to non-linearly map a higher bit depth image produced by the sensor to the requested number of bits.



*Formulas for converting the fixed point (relative) values to floating point (absolute) values are not provided. Users wishing to work with real-world values should refer to the Absolute Value CSRs section of the Appendix ([page 151](#)).*



**Format:**

Same format as [BRIGHTNESS: 800h on page 87](#).



*When ON is written to the ON\_OFF field, the ON\_OFF field of the LUT register ([page 97](#)) is turned to OFF.*

**LUT: 80000h – 80048h**

This register allows the user to access and control a lookup table (LUT), with entries stored on-board the camera. The LUT will also be modified under the following circumstances:

- Camera reinitialization via the INITIALIZE register 000h
- Changing the CURRENT\_VIDEO\_MODE or CURRENT\_VIDEO\_FORMAT registers 604h or 608h
- Changing the GAMMA register 818h or ABS\_VAL\_GAMMA register

The look up table function can define up to 16 banks where each bank can contain up to 16 channels. Each channel shall define a table with a length of  $2^{\text{Input\_Depth}}$  entries where each entry is *Output\_Depth* bits wide. Channel table entries shall be padded to 32 bits or a complete quadlet.

Each bank may be read only, write only or both read and write capable as shown by the *LUT\_Bank\_Rd\_Inq* and *LUT\_Bank\_Wr\_Inq* fields. The active bank shall be set by writing to the *Active\_Bank* field of the LUT\_Ctrl register.

The *Bank\_X\_Offset\_Inq* register shall give the offset to start address of the array of channel tables in each bank. Multiple channels can be used to process color video pixel data.

| Offset | Name                     | Field              | Bit      | Description                                   |
|--------|--------------------------|--------------------|----------|---|
| 80000h | LUT_Ctrl_Inq (Read Only) | Presence_Inq       | [0]      | Presence of this feature 0:N/A 1:Available    |
|        |                          |                    | [1..4]   | Reserved                                      |
|        |                          | ON_OFF_Inq         | [5]      | Capability of turning this feature ON or OFF. |
|        |                          |                    | [6..7]   | Reserved                                      |
|        |                          | Input_Depth        | [8..12]  | Input data bit depth                          |
|        |                          | Output_Depth       | [13..17] | Output data bit depth                         |
|        |                          |                    | [18]     | Reserved                                      |
|        |                          | Number_of_Channels | [19..23] | Number of channels                            |
|        |                          |                    | [24..26] | Reserved                                      |
|        |                          | Number_of_Banks    | [27..31] | Number of banks                               |
| 80004h | LUT_Bank_                | Read_Bank_         | [0]      | Capability of reading data from Bank 0        |

| Offset | Name            | Field            | Bit  | Description                             |
|--------|-----------------|------------------|------|---|
|        | Rd_Inq          | 0_Inq            |      |   |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_1_Inq  | [1]  | Capability of reading data from Bank 1  |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_2_Inq  | [2]  | Capability of reading data from Bank 2  |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_3_Inq  | [3]  | Capability of reading data from Bank 3  |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_4_Inq  | [4]  | Capability of reading data from Bank 4  |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_5_Inq  | [5]  | Capability of reading data from Bank 5  |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_6_Inq  | [6]  | Capability of reading data from Bank 6  |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_7_Inq  | [7]  | Capability of reading data from Bank 7  |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_8_Inq  | [8]  | Capability of reading data from Bank 8  |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_9_Inq  | [9]  | Capability of reading data from Bank 9  |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_10_Inq | [10] | Capability of reading data from Bank 10 |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_11_Inq | [11] | Capability of reading data from Bank 11 |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_12_Inq | [12] | Capability of reading data from Bank 12 |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_13_Inq | [13] | Capability of reading data from Bank 13 |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_14_Inq | [14] | Capability of reading data from Bank 14 |
|        |                 | Read_Bank_15_Inq | [15] | Capability of reading data from Bank 15 |
|        | LUT_Bank_Wr_Inq | Write_Bank_0_Inq | [16] | Capability of writing data to Bank 0    |
|        |                 | Write_Bank_1_Inq | [17] | Capability of writing data to Bank 1    |
|        |                 | Write_Bank_2_Inq | [18] | Capability of writing data to Bank 2    |
|        |                 | Write_Bank_3_Inq | [19] | Capability of writing data to Bank 3    |
|        |                 | Write_Bank_4_Inq | [20] | Capability of writing data to Bank 4    |

| Offset | Name              | Field                 | Bit      | Description  |
|--------|-------------------|-----------------------|----------|--|
|        |                   | Write_Bank_5_Inq      | [21]     | Capability of writing data to Bank 5   |
|        |                   | Write_Bank_6_Inq      | [22]     | Capability of writing data to Bank 6   |
|        |                   | Write_Bank_7_Inq      | [23]     | Capability of writing data to Bank 7   |
|        |                   | Write_Bank_8_Inq      | [24]     | Capability of writing data to Bank 8   |
|        |                   | Write_Bank_9_Inq      | [25]     | Capability of writing data to Bank 9   |
|        |                   | Write_Bank_10_Inq     | [26]     | Capability of writing data to Bank 10  |
|        |                   | Write_Bank_11_Inq     | [27]     | Capability of writing data to Bank 11  |
|        |                   | Write_Bank_12_Inq     | [28]     | Capability of writing data to Bank 12  |
|        |                   | Write_Bank_13_Inq     | [29]     | Capability of writing data to Bank 13  |
|        |                   | Write_Bank_14_Inq     | [30]     | Capability of writing data to Bank 14  |
|        |                   | Write_Bank_15_Inq     | [31]     | Capability of writing data to Bank 15  |
| 80008h | LUT_Ctrl          | Presence_Inq          | [0]      | Presence of this Feature 0: N/A 1: Available   |
|        |                   |                       | [1..4]   | Reserved   |
|        |                   | ON_OFF                | [5]      | Write: ON or OFF this feature Read: read a status 0: OFF 1: ON<br>When ON is written, the ON_OFF field of the GAMMA register ( <a href="#">page 96</a> ) is turned to OFF. |
|        |                   |                       | [6..27]  | Reserved   |
|        |                   | Active_Bank           | [28..31] | Active bank  |
| 8000Ch | Bank_0_Offset_Inq | Bank_0_Quadlet_Offset | [0..31]  | Quadlet offset of Bank 0 table data  |
| 80010h | Bank_1_Offset_Inq | Bank_1_Quadlet_Offset | [0..31]  | Quadlet offset of Bank 1 table data  |
| 80014h | Bank_2_Offset_Inq | Bank_2_Quadlet_Offset | [0..31]  | Quadlet offset of Bank 2 table data  |
| 80018h | Bank_3_Offset_Inq | Bank_3_Quadlet_Offset | [0..31]  | Quadlet offset of Bank 3 table data  |
| 8001Ch | Bank_4_Offset_Inq | Bank_4_Quadlet_Offset | [0..31]  | Quadlet offset of Bank 4 table data  |

| Offset | Name               | Field                  | Bit     | Description                          |
|--------|--------------------|------------------------|---------|--------------------------------------|
| 80020h | Bank_5_Offset_Inq  | Bank_5_Quadlet_Offset  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset of Bank 5 table data  |
| 80024h | Bank_6_Offset_Inq  | Bank_6_Quadlet_Offset  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset of Bank 6 table data  |
| 80028h | Bank_7_Offset_Inq  | Bank_7_Quadlet_Offset  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset of Bank 7 table data  |
| 8002Ch | Bank_8_Offset_Inq  | Bank_8_Quadlet_Offset  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset of Bank 8 table data  |
| 80030h | Bank_9_Offset_Inq  | Bank_9_Quadlet_Offset  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset of Bank 9 table data  |
| 80034h | Bank_10_Offset_Inq | Bank_10_Quadlet_Offset | [0..31] | Quadlet offset of Bank 10 table data |
| 80038h | Bank_11_Offset_Inq | Bank_11_Quadlet_Offset | [0..31] | Quadlet offset of Bank 11 table data |
| 8003Ch | Bank_12_Offset_Inq | Bank_12_Quadlet_Offset | [0..31] | Quadlet offset of Bank 12 table data |
| 80040h | Bank_13_Offset_Inq | Bank_13_Quadlet_Offset | [0..31] | Quadlet offset of Bank 13 table data |
| 80044h | Bank_14_Offset_Inq | Bank_14_Quadlet_Offset | [0..31] | Quadlet offset of Bank 14 table data |
| 80048h | Bank_15_Offset_Inq | Bank_15_Quadlet_Offset | [0..31] | Quadlet offset of Bank 15 table data |

### Lookup Table Data Structure

Each bank of channels is composed of entries padded to a complete 32-bit quadlet. Each bank is organized as show in the table below.

**Cn**: Channel Number

**En** : Entry Number

|  |
|--|
| C(0)E(0)<br>...<br>...<br>C(0)E(2 <sup>Input_Depth_1</sup> ) |
| C(1)E(0)<br>...<br>...                                       |

|  |
|--|
| C(1)E(2 <sup>Input_Depth_1</sup> )                     |
| ...  |
| ...  |
| ...  |
| C(Number_of_Channels-1)E(0)                            |
| ...  |
| ...  |
| C(Number_of_Channels-1) E(2 <sup>Input_Depth_1</sup> ) |

### 6.5.1 Example: Setting Gamma Using the FlyCapture API

The following FlyCapture 2.0 code snippet adjusts gamma to 1.5 using the C++ interface. The snippet assumes a `Camera` object `cam`.

```
//Declare a Property struct.

Property prop;

//Define the property to adjust.

prop.type = GAMMA;

//Ensure the property is on.

prop.onOff = true;

//Ensure the property is set up to use absolute value control.

prop.absControl = true;

//Set the absolute value of gamma to 1.5

prop.absValue = 1.5;

//Set the property.

error = cam.SetProperty( &prop );
```

## 6.6 Saturation

The camera supports saturation adjustment of color values.



*Saturation in this context does not refer to the saturation of a CCD charge.*

### SATURATION: 814h

This register provides a mechanism to control the Saturation component of the images being produced by the camera, given a standard Hue, Saturation, Value (HSV) color space.



*Formulas for converting the fixed point (relative) values to floating point (absolute) values are not provided. Users wishing to work with real-world values should refer to the Absolute Value CSRs section of the Appendix ([page 151](#)).*

**Format:**

Same format as [BRIGHTNESS: 800h on page 87](#).

### 6.6.1 Example: Setting Saturation Using the FlyCapture API

The following FlyCapture 2.0 code snippet adjusts saturation to 200% using the C++ interface. The snippet assumes a `Camera` object `cam`.

```
//Declare a property struct.

Property prop;

//Define the property to adjust.

prop.type = SATURATION;

//Ensure the property is on.

prop.onOff = true;

//Ensure auto-adjust mode is off.

prop.autoManualMode = false;

//Ensure the property is set up to use absolute value control.

prop.absControl = true;

//Set the absolute value of saturation to 200%.

prop.absValue = 200;

//Set the property.

error = cam.SetProperty( &prop );
```

## 6.7 Hue

The camera supports hue adjustment, which defines the color phase of images.

### HUE: 810h

This register provides a mechanism to control the Hue component of the images being produced by the camera, given a standard Hue, Saturation, Value (HSV) color space.



*Formulas for converting the fixed point (relative) values to floating point (absolute) values are not provided. Users wishing to work with real-world values should refer to the Absolute Value CSRs section of the Appendix ([page 151](#)).*

**Format:**

Same format as [BRIGHTNESS: 800h on page 87](#).

### 6.7.1 Example: Setting Hue Using the FlyCapture API

The following FlyCapture 2.0 code snippet adjusts hue to -30 deg. using the C++ interface. The snippet assumes a `Camera` object `cam`.

```
//Declare a Property struct.  
  
Property prop;  
  
//Define the property to adjust.  
  
prop.type = HUE;  
  
//Ensure the property is on.  
  
prop.onOff = true;  
  
//Ensure the property is set up to use absolute value control.  
  
prop.absControl = true;  
  
//Set the absolute value of hue to -30 deg.  
  
prop.absValue = -30;  
  
//Set the property.  
  
error = cam.SetProperty( &prop );
```

## 6.8 Sharpness

The camera supports sharpness adjustment, which refers to the filtering of an image to reduce blurring at image edges. Sharpness is implemented as an average upon a 3x3 block of pixels, and is only applied to the green component of the Bayer tiled pattern. For sharpness values greater than 1000, the pixel is sharpened; for values less than 1000 it is blurred. When sharpness is in auto mode and gain is low, then a small amount of sharpening is applied, which increases as gain decreases. If gain is high, a small amount of blur is applied, increasing as gain increases.

When the camera is outputting raw Bayer data, Sharpness is OFF by default. Otherwise, the default setting is ON.

## SHARPNESS: 808h

### **Format:**

Same format as [BRIGHTNESS: 800h on page 87](#).

### **6.8.1 Example: Setting Sharpness Using the FlyCapture API**

The following FlyCapture 2.0 code snippet adjusts sharpness to 1500 using the C++ interface. The snippet assumes a `Camera` object `cam`.

```
//Declare a Property struct.
Property prop;

//Define the property to adjust.
prop.type = SHARPNESS;

//Ensure the property is on.
prop.onOff = true;

//Ensure auto-adjust mode is off.
prop.autoManualMode = false;

//Set the value of sharpness to 1500.
prop.valueA = 1500;

//Set the property.
error = cam.SetProperty( &prop );
```

## **6.9 White Balance**

The camera supports white balance adjustment, which is a system of color correction to account for differing lighting conditions. Adjusting white balance by modifying the relative gain of R, G and B in an image enables white areas to look "whiter". Taking some subset of the target image and looking at the relative red to green and blue to green response, the objective is to scale the red and blue channels so that the response is 1:1:1. The white balance scheme outlined in the IIDC specification states that blue and red are adjustable and that green is not. The blue and red values can be controlled using the WHITE\_BALANCE register 0x80C ([page 105](#)).

The camera also implements Auto and One\_Push white balance. One use of One\_Push / Auto white balance is to obtain a similar color balance between cameras that are slightly different from each other. In theory, if different cameras are pointed at the same scene, using One\_Push / Auto will result in a similar color balance between the cameras.

One\_Push only attempts to automatically adjust white balance for a set period of time before stopping. It uses a "white detection" algorithm that looks for "whitish" pixels in the raw Bayer image



data. One\_Push adjusts the white balance for a specific number of iterations; if it cannot locate any whitish pixels, it will gradually look at the whitest objects in the scene and try to work off them. It will continue this until has completed its finite set of iterations.

Auto is continually adjusting white balance. It differs from One\_Push in that it works almost solely off the whitest objects in the scene.



*The white balance of the camera before using One\_Push/Auto must already be relatively close; that is, if Red is set to 0 and Blue is at maximum (two extremes), One\_Push/Auto will not function as expected. However, if the camera is already close to being color balanced, then One\_Push/Auto will function properly.*



*White balance may be unresponsive in auto mode if auto exposure (page 93) is < 0.1 EV (approximately).*

## WHITE\_BALANCE: 80Ch

This register controls the relative gain of pixels in the Bayer tiling used in the CCD of a color camera. Control of the register is achieved via the *R\_Value* and *B\_Value* fields and the *On\_Off* bit. Both value fields specify relative gain, with a value that is half the maximum value being a relative gain of zero. This register has two states:

- *OFF* - the same gain is applied to all pixels in the Bayer tiling.
- *ON* - the *R\_Value* field is applied to the red pixels of the Bayer tiling and the *B\_Value* field is applied to the blue pixels of the Bayer tiling.

The following table illustrates the default gain settings for most cameras.

|                 | Red  | Blue |
|-----------------|------|------|
| Black and White | 32   | 32   |
| Color           | 1023 | 1023 |

### Format:

| Field        | Bit   | Description   |
|--------------|-------|---|
| Presence_Inq | [0]   | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A, 1: Available  |
| Abs_Control  | [1]   | Absolute value control<br>0: Control with value in the Value field<br>1: Control with value in the associated Abs Value CSR<br>If this bit is 1, then Value is ignored    |
|              | [2-4] | Reserved  |
| One_Push     | [5]   | One push auto mode (controlled automatically by camera only once)<br>Write: 1: Begin to work (self-cleared after operation)<br>Read: 0: Not in operation, 1: In operation |

| Field             | Bit     | Description  |
|-------------------|---------|--|
|                   |         | If A_M_Mode = 1, this bit is ignored   |
| ON_OFF            | [6]     | Write: ON or OFF for this feature<br>Read: read a status<br>0: OFF, 1: ON<br>If this bit = 0, other fields will be read only |
| A_M_Mode          | [7]     | Write: Set the mode.<br>Read: read the current mode.<br>0: Manual, 1: Auto   |
| U_Value / B_Value | [8-19]  | Blue Value.<br>A write to this value in 'Auto' mode will be ignored.   |
| V_Value / R_Value | [20-31] | Red Value.<br>A write to this value in 'Auto' mode will be ignored.  |

### 6.9.1 Example: Setting White Balance Using the FlyCapture API

The following FlyCapture 2.0 code snippet adjusts the white balance red channel to 500 and the blue channel to 850 using the C++ interface. The snippet assumes a `Camera` object `cam`.

```
//Declare a Property struct.
Property prop;

//Define the property to adjust.
prop.type = WHITE_BALANCE;

//Ensure the property is on.
prop.onOff = true;

//Ensure auto-adjust mode is off.
prop.autoManualMode = false;

//Set the white balance red channel to 500.
prop.valueA = 500;

//Set the white balance blue channel to 850.
prop.valueB = 850;

//Set the property.
error = cam.SetProperty( &prop );
```

## 6.10 Bayer Color Processing

In color models, a Bayer tile pattern color filter array captures the intensity red, green or blue in each pixel on the sensor. The image below is an example of a Bayer tile pattern. To determine the actual pattern on your camera, query the BAYER\_TILE\_MAPPING register 1040h ([page 108](#)).

|     |     |     |     |     |
|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| G1  | R2  | G3  | R4  | G5  |
| B6  | G7  | B8  | G9  | B10 |
| G11 | R12 | G13 | R14 | G15 |
| B16 | G17 | B18 | G19 | B20 |
| G21 | R22 | G23 | R24 | G25 |

Figure 6.1: Example Bayer tile pattern

In order to produce color (e.g. RGB, YUV) and greyscale (e.g. Y8, Y16) images, color models perform on-board processing of the Bayer tile pattern output produced by the CCD.

Conversion from RGB to YUV uses the following formula:

$$\begin{bmatrix} Y_{601} \\ C_B \\ C_R \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} 16 \\ 128 \\ 128 \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1}{256} \begin{bmatrix} 65.738 & 129.057 & 25.064 \\ -37.945 & -74.494 & 112.439 \\ 112.439 & -94.154 & -18.285 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} R_{255} \\ G_{255} \\ B_{255} \end{bmatrix}$$

To convert the Bayer tile pattern to greyscale, the camera adds the value for each of the RGB components in the color processed pixel to produce a single greyscale (Y) value for that pixel, as follows:

$$Y = R/4 + G/2 + B/4$$

### 6.10.1 Accessing Raw Bayer Data

Users interested in accessing the raw Bayer data to apply their own color conversion algorithm or one of the FlyCapture library algorithms should acquire images using one of the Format\_7 video modes that support Raw pixel encoding. (See [Video Formats, Modes and Frame Rates on page 35](#)). Alternatively, use the BAYER\_MONO\_CTRL register 1050h ([page 48](#)). This register enables raw Bayer output in non-Format\_7 Y8 / Y16 modes, or Format\_7 Mono8 / Mono16 modes.

The actual physical arrangement of the red, green and blue "pixels" for a given camera is determined by the arrangement of the color filter array on the imaging sensor itself. The format, or order, in which this raw color data is streamed out, however, depends on the specific camera model and firmware version. This format can be queried using the BAYER\_TILE\_MAPPING register 0x1040 ([page 108](#)).

Using the FlyCapture 2.0 SDK, raw image data can be accessed programmatically via the `getData` method of the `Image` class. In Raw8 modes, the first byte represents the pixel at [row 0, column 0], the second byte at [row 0, column 1], and so on. Read the BAYER\_TILE\_MAPPING register 0x1040 to determine the current Bayer output format (RGGB, GRBG, and so on). Using a Bayer format of RGGB, for example, the `getData` method returns the following (assuming `char* data = rawImage.GetData()`; and an `Image` object `rawImage`):

- `data[0]` = Row 0, Column 0 = red pixel (R)
- `data[1]` = Row 0, Column 1 = green pixel (G)
- `data[640]` = Row 1, Column 0 = green pixel (G)
- `data[641]` = Row 1, Column 1 = blue pixel (B)

#### Related Knowledge Base Articles

| ID | Title   | URL  |
|----|---|--|
| 33 | Different color processing algorithms.                                | <a href="http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=33">www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=33</a> |
| 37 | Writing color processing software and color interpolation algorithms. | <a href="http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=37">www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=37</a> |

#### BAYER\_TILE\_MAPPING: 1040h

This 32-bit read only register specifies the sense of the cameras' Bayer tiling. Various colors are indicated by the ASCII representation of the first letter of their name.

| Color          | ASCII |
|----------------|-------|
| Red (R)        | 52h   |
| Green (G)      | 47h   |
| Blue (B)       | 42h   |
| Monochrome (Y) | 59h   |

For example, 0x52474742 is RGGB and 0x59595959 is YYYY.



*Because color models support on-board color processing, the camera reports YYYY tiling when operating in any non-raw Bayer data format. For more information, see [Bayer Color Processing on previous page](#).*

#### Format

| Field         | Bit   | Description   |
|---------------|-------|---|
| Bayer_Sense_A | [0-7] | ASCII representation of the first letter of the color of pixel (0,0) in the Bayer tile. |

| Field         | Bit     | Description   |
|---------------|---------|---|
| Bayer_Sense_B | [8-15]  | ASCII representation of the first letter of the color of pixel (0,1) in the Bayer tile. |
| Bayer_Sense_C | [16-24] | ASCII representation of the first letter of the color of pixel (1,0) in the Bayer tile. |
| Bayer_Sense_D | [25-31] | ASCII representation of the first letter of the color of pixel (1,1) in the Bayer tile. |

## 6.11 Image Flip / Mirror

The camera supports horizontal image mirroring. The mirror image operation is performed on the camera using the on-board frame buffer ([page 82](#)).

MIRROR\_IMAGE\_CTRL: 1054h

**Format:**

| Field             | Bit    | Description  |
|-------------------|--------|--|
| Presence_Inq      | [0]    | Presence of this feature.<br>0: N/A, 1: Available  |
|                   | [1-30] | Reserved.  |
| Mirror_Image_Ctrl | [31]   | Value<br>0: Disable horizontal (mirror) image flip<br>1: Enable horizontal (mirror) image flip |

## 6.12 Embedded Image Information

The camera provides a feature that allows image timestamps, region of interest (ROI) and other camera settings information to be embedded in the first several pixels of each image.

FRAME\_INFO: 12F8h

This register controls the frame-specific information that is embedded into the first several pixels of the image. The first byte of embedded image data starts at pixel 0,0 (column 0, row 0) and continues in the first row of the image data: (1,0), (2,0), and so forth. Users using color cameras that perform Bayer color processing on the PC must extract the value from the non-color processed image in order for the data to be valid.



*Embedded image values are those in effect at the end of shutter integration.*

Each piece of information takes up 1 quadlet (4 bytes) of the image. When the camera is operating in Y8 (8bits/pixel) mode, this is therefore 4 pixels worth of data.

Insertion of each quadlet is controlled by a bit in this register. Because it is a bit field, quadlets appear in reverse order from the bits that control them. So, setting bit 31 to '1' enables Timestamp embedding, bit 30 enables Gain, etc. For black and white cameras, white balance is still included, but no valid data is provided.

For example, a write of 800003FFh to this register would turn on all possible options. Therefore, the first 10 quadlets (40 bytes) of image data would contain camera information in the following format, when accessed using the FlyCapture 2.0 API (assuming `unsigned char* data = rawImage.GetData();` and an `Image` object `rawImage`):

- `data[0]` = first byte of Timestamp data
- `data[4]` = first byte of Gain data
- `data[24]` = first byte of Frame Counter data

If only Shutter embedding were enabled (0x12F8 = 0x80000004), then the first 4 bytes of the image would contain Shutter information for that image. Similarly, if only Brightness embedding were enabled, the first 4 bytes would contain Brightness information.

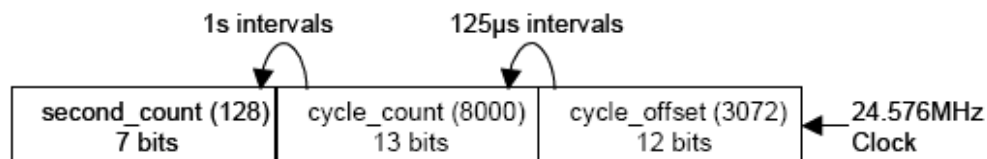
**Format:**

| Field           | Bit     | Description  | Frame-Specific Information |
|-----------------|---------|--|----------------------------|
| Presence_Inq    | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available  |                            |
|                 | [1-5]   | Reserved   |                            |
| ROI_Pos_Inq     | [6]     | Presence of image-specific information display<br><br>0: N/A 1: Available  |                            |
| GPIO_State_Inq  | [7]     |  |                            |
| Strobe_Pat_Inq  | [8]     |  |                            |
| Frame_Count_Inq | [9]     |  |                            |
| WB_CSR_Inq      | [10]    |  |                            |
| Exp_CSR_Inq     | [11]    |  |                            |
| Bright_CSR_Inq  | [12]    |  |                            |
| Shutter_CSR_Inq | [13]    |  |                            |
| Gain_CSR_Inq    | [14]    |  |                            |
| Time_Inq        | [15]    |  |                            |
| CSR_Abs_Value   | [16]    | Toggles between displaying 32-bit relative or absolute CSR values. If absolute value not supported, relative value is displayed.<br>0: Relative 1: Absolute<br>This field is currently read-only |                            |
|                 | [17-21] | Reserved   |                            |

| Field       | Bit | Description  | Frame-Specific Information   |
|-------------|-----|--|--|
| Insert_Info | 22  | Display image-specific information<br>0: Off 1: On | Region of Interest (ROI) position (See “Interpreting ROI Information” below) |
|             | 23  |  | GPIO Pin State   |
|             | 24  |  | Strobe Pattern Counter   |
|             | 25  |  | Frame Counter  |
|             | 26  |  | White Balance CSR  |
|             | 27  |  | Exposure CSR   |
|             | 28  |  | Brightness CSR   |
|             | 29  |  | Shutter Value  |
|             | 30  |  | Gain CSR   |
|             | 31  |  | Timestamp (See “Interpreting Timestamp information” below)                   |

### Interpreting Timestamp information

The Timestamp format matches the CYCLE\_TIME 0xFF100200 register format as follows (some cameras replace the bottom 4 bits of the cycle\_offset with a 4-bit version of the Frame Counter):



cycle\_offset increments from 0 to 3071, which equals one cycle\_count. cycle\_count increments from 0 to 7999, which equals one second. second\_count increments from 0 to 127. All counters reset to 0 at the end of each cycle.

### Interpreting ROI information

The first two bytes of the quadlet are the distance from the left frame border that the region of interest (ROI) is shifted. The next two bytes are the distance from the top frame border that the ROI is shifted.

## 6.13 Pixel Defect Correction

Point Grey tests for white blemish pixels on each camera that is produced. The mechanism to correct blemish pixels is hard-coded into the camera firmware, and can be turned off and on by the user. Pixel correction is on by default. The correction algorithm involves applying the average color

or grayscale values of neighboring pixels to the blemish pixel. The maximum number of pixels corrected is 60.

**Related Knowledge Base Articles**

| ID  | Title   | URL  |
|-----|---|--|
| 314 | How Point Grey tests for white blemish pixels | <a href="http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=314">www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=314</a> |

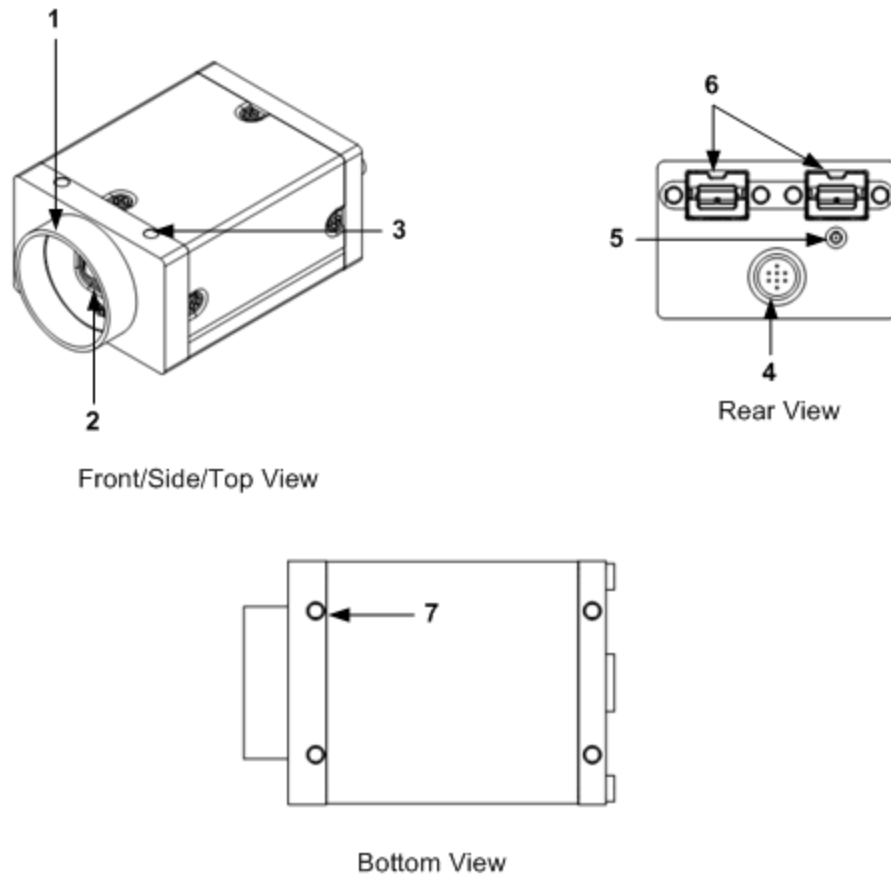
**PIXEL\_DEFECT\_CTRL: 1A60h****Format:**

| Field        | Bit     | Description  |
|--------------|---------|--|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available    |
|              | [1-5]   | Reserved   |
| ON_OFF       | [6]     | Enable or disable pixel correction<br>0: Off 1: On |
| Reserved     | [7]     | Reserved   |
| Max_Pixels   | [8-19]  | Maximum number of pixels that can be corrected     |
| Cur_Pixels   | [20-31] | Current number of pixels that are being corrected  |



## 7 Camera Mechanical Properties

### 7.1 Physical Description

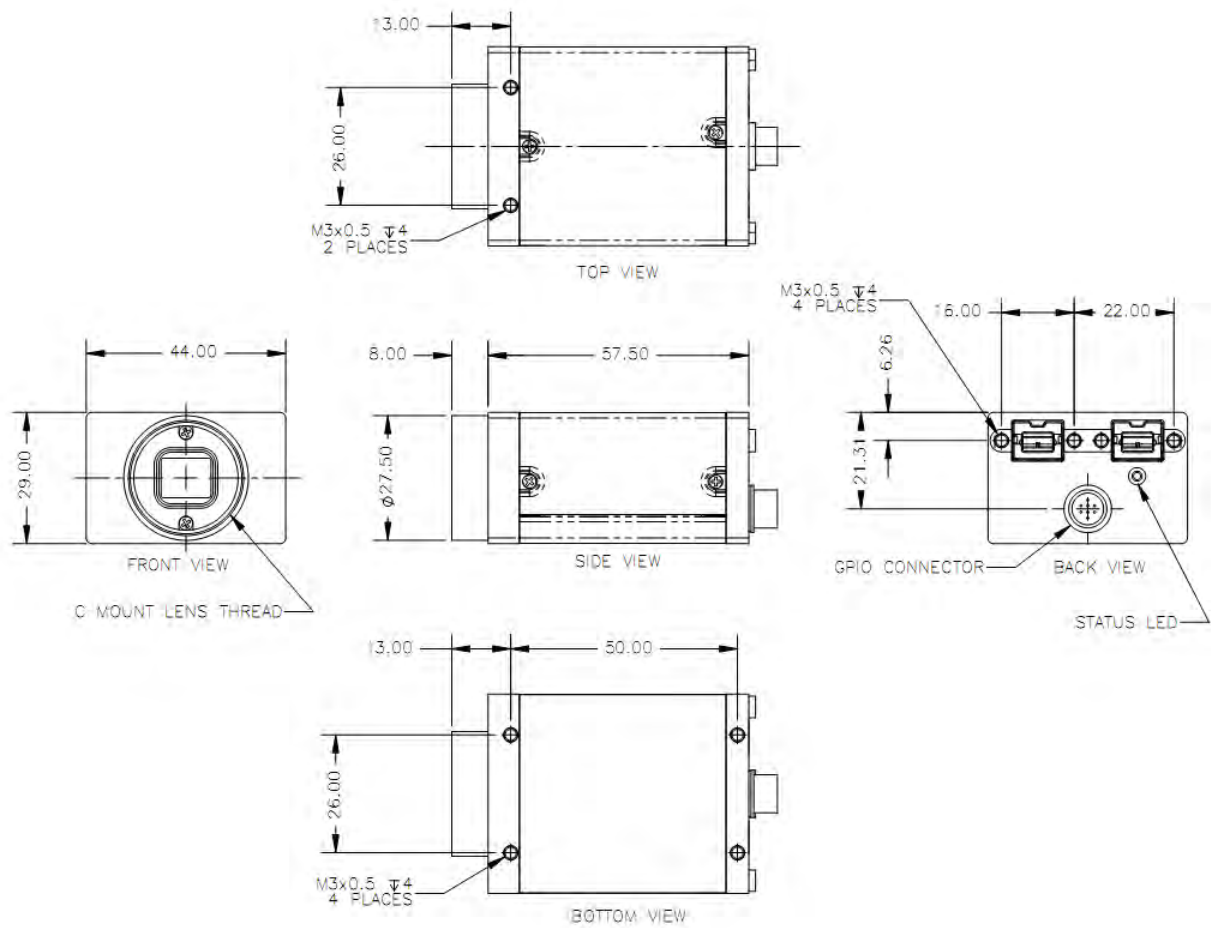


1. Lens holder (C-mount) ([page 115](#))
2. Glass / IR filter system ([page 117](#))
3. M3 x 0.5 mm mounting holes ([page 117](#))
4. General Purpose I/O Connector ([page 30](#))
5. Status LED ([page 120](#))
6. IEEE-1394 connectors ([page 29](#))
7. M3 x 0.5 mm mounting holes ([page 117](#))

### 7.2 Camera Dimensions



To obtain 3D models, contact  
[support@ptgrey.com](mailto:support@ptgrey.com).

**Figure 7.1: Camera Dimensional Diagram**

## 7.3 Tripod Adapter Dimensions

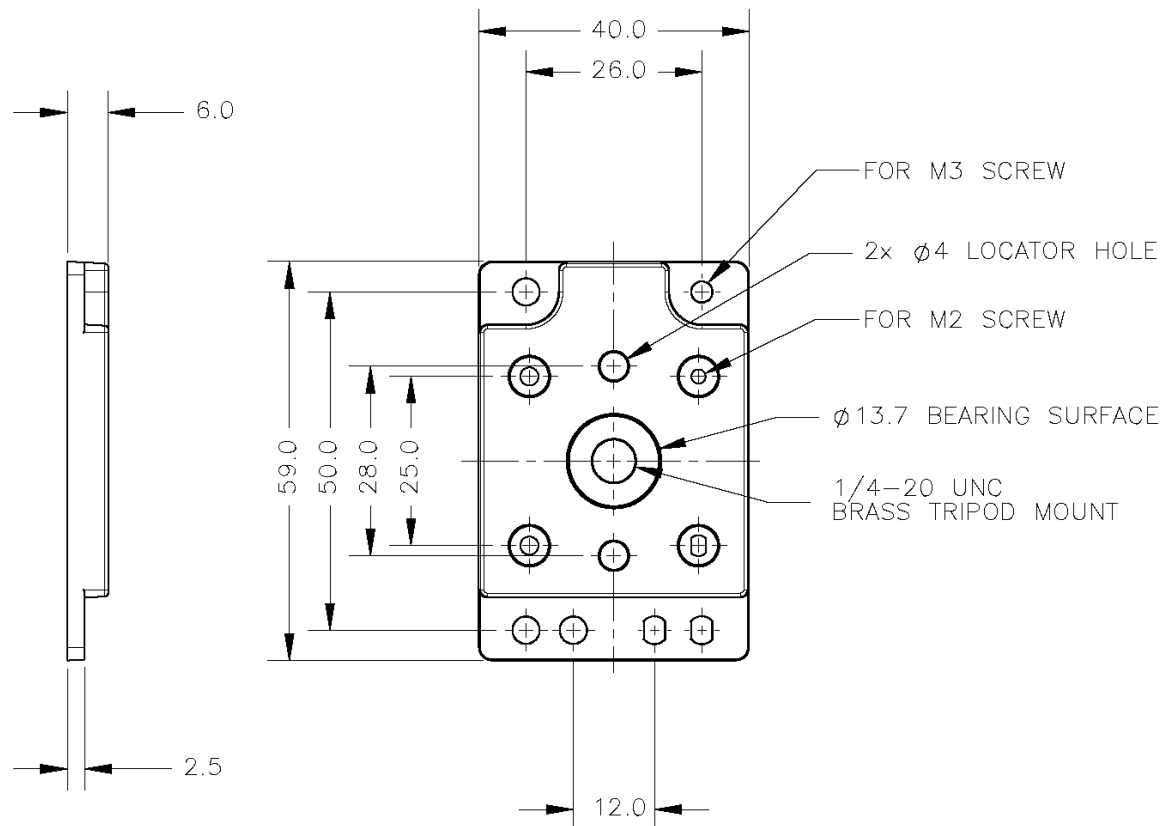
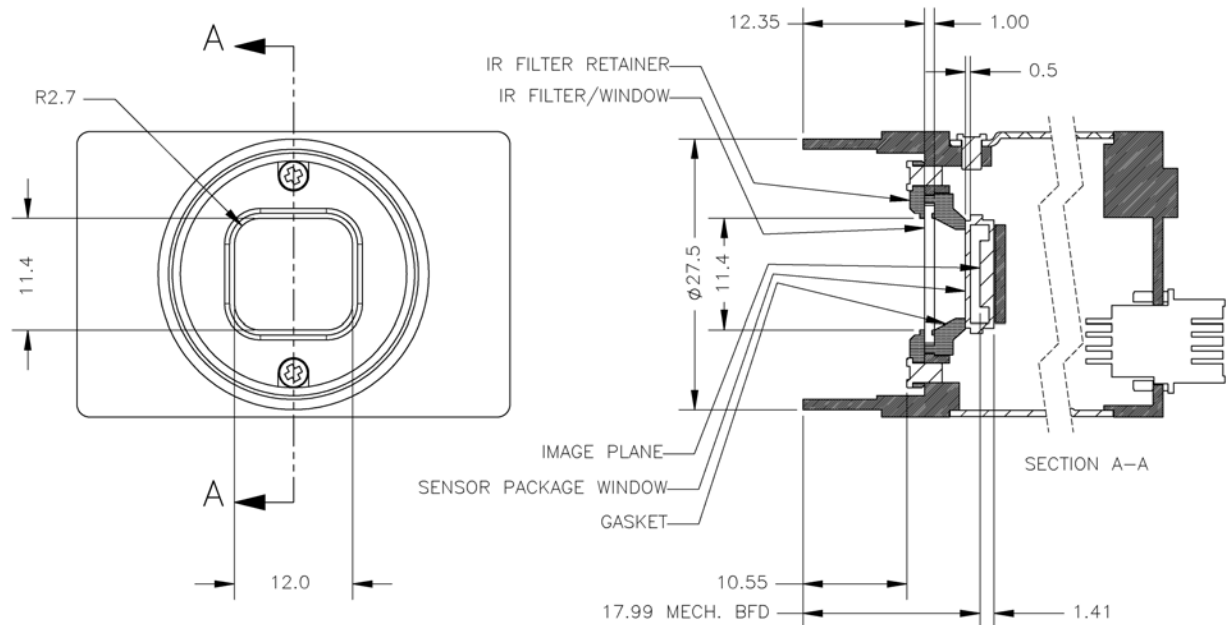


Figure 7.2: Tripod Adapter Dimensional Diagram

## 7.4 Lens Mount Dimensions

The lens holder is compatible with C-mount lenses. Lenses are not included with individual cameras.



Although the C-mount lens specification for back flange distance (BFD) is 17.52 mm, these distances are offset due to the presence of both a 1 mm infrared cutoff (IRC) filter and a 0.5 mm sensor package window. These two pieces of glass fit between the lens and the sensor image plane. The IRC filter is installed on color cameras. In monochrome cameras, it is a transparent piece of glass. The sensor package window is installed by the sensor manufacturer. Both components cause refraction, which requires some offset in flange back distance to correct. The resulting BFD is 17.99 mm.

Correct focus cannot be achieved when using a CS-mount lens on a C-mount camera.

## 7.5 Dust Protection

The camera housing is designed to prevent dust from falling directly onto the sensor's protective glass surface. This is achieved by placing a piece of clear glass (monochrome camera models) or IR cut-off filter (color models) that sits above the surface of the sensor's glass. A removable plastic retainer keeps this glass/filter system in place. By increasing the distance between the imaging surface and the location of the potential dust particles, the likelihood of interference from the dust (assuming non-collimated light) and the possibility of damage to the sensor during cleaning is reduced.



- *Cameras are sealed when they are shipped. To avoid contamination, seals should not be broken until cameras are ready for assembly at customer's site.*
- *Use caution when removing the protective glass or filter. Damage to any component of the optical path voids the Hardware Warranty described at the beginning of this reference manual.*
- *Removing the protective glass or filter alters the optical path of the camera, and may result in problems obtaining proper focus with your lens.*

**Related Knowledge Base Articles**

| ID  | Title                                      | URL   |
|-----|--|---|
| 215 | Removing the IR filter from a color camera | <a href="http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=215">http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=215</a> |
| 345 | Selecting a lens for your camera           | <a href="http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=345">http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=345</a> |

## 7.6 Mounting

### 7.6.1 Using the Case

The case is equipped with the following mounting holes:

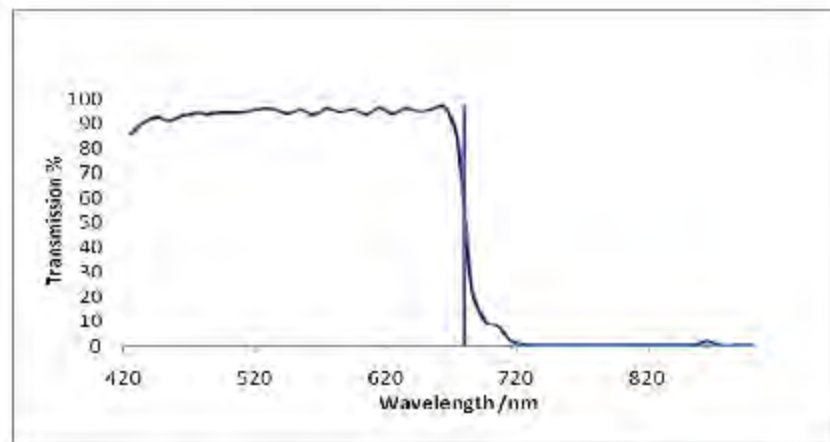
- Two (2) M3 x 0.5 mm mounting holes on the top of the case
- Four (4) M3 x 0.5mm mounting holes on the bottom of the case that can be used to attach the camera directly to a custom mount or to the tripod mounting bracket

### 7.6.2 Using the Tripod Adapter

The tripod mounting bracket is equipped with four (4) M3 mounting holes. For more information, see [Tripod Adapter Dimensions on page 1](#).

## 7.7 Infrared Cut-Off Filters

Point Grey color camera models are equipped with an additional infrared (IR) cut-off filter. This filter can reduce sensitivity in the near infrared spectrum and help prevent smearing. The properties of this filter are illustrated in the results below.



**Figure 7.3: IR filter transmittance graph**

In monochrome models, the IR filter is replaced with a transparent piece of glass.

The following are the properties of the IR filter/protective glass:

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <b>Type</b>                  | Reflective   |
| <b>Material</b>              | Schott D 263 T or BK7 equivalent for coating filters |
| <b>Physical Filter Size</b>  | 14 mm x 14 mm  |
| <b>Glass Thickness</b>       | 1.0 mm   |
| <b>Dimensional Tolerance</b> | +/-0.1 mm`   |
| <b>Coating Filters</b>       | Scott D 263 T  |

For more information, see [Dust Protection on page 116](#).

#### Related Knowledge Base Articles

| ID  | Title                                      | URL   |
|-----|--|---|
| 215 | Removing the IR filter from a color camera | <a href="http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=215">http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&amp;q=215</a> |

## 8 Troubleshooting and Support

### 8.1 Technical Support Resources

Point Grey Research Inc. endeavors to provide the highest level of technical support possible to our customers. Most support resources can be accessed through the Product Support section of our website: [www.ptgrey.com/support](http://www.ptgrey.com/support).

#### Creating a Customer Login Account

The first step in accessing our technical support resources is to obtain a Customer Login Account. This requires a valid name, e-mail address, and camera serial number. To apply for a Customer Login Account go to [www.ptgrey.com/support/downloads/](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/downloads/).

#### Knowledge Base

Our on-line knowledge base at [www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/) contains answers to some of the most common support questions. It is constantly updated, expanded, and refined to ensure that our customers have access to the latest information.

#### Product Downloads

Customers with a Customer Login Account can access the latest software and firmware for their cameras from our downloads site at [www.ptgrey.com/support/downloads](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/downloads). We encourage our customers to keep their software and firmware up-to-date by downloading and installing the latest versions.

#### Contacting Technical Support

Before contacting Technical Support, have you:

1. *Read the product documentation and user manual?*
2. *Searched the Knowledge Base?*
3. *Downloaded and installed the latest version of software and/or firmware?*

If you have done all the above and still can't find an answer to your question, contact our Technical Support team at [www.ptgrey.com/support/contact/](http://www.ptgrey.com/support/contact/).

### 8.1.1 Status Indicator LED

| LED Status                       | Description   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| Maximum red (Initial connection) | Initial startup. On until camera is initialized.  |
| Maximum red (During operation)   | Condition 1: Bus Rest. On for 0.66s.<br>Condition 2: Power failure. On until power-up via CAMERA_POWER 0x610 ( <a href="#">page 16</a> ). |
| Dull Red                         | Configuration error.  |
| Bright Red                       | Configuration error.  |
| Dull Green                       | Camera is idle.   |
| Bright Green                     | Firewire activity. On for 0.5s during activity.   |
| Dull Yellow                      | Powered down.   |
| Bright Yellow                    | Powered down + activity. On for 0.5s during activity.   |
| Red/Green flashing               | Camera firmware is being updated. Flashes at 5Hz.   |

**Table 8.1: Status indicator LED descriptions**

#### LED\_CTRL: 1A14h

This register allows the user to turn off the camera's status LED. LED(s) are re-enabled the next time the camera is power cycled.

##### Format:

| Field        | Bit     | Description                                      |
|--------------|---------|--|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available  |
|              | [1-22]  | Reserved   |
| LED_Ctrl     | [23-31] | Enable or disable the LED<br>0x00: Off, 0x74: On |

## 8.2 Common Image Sensor Artifacts

### White Blemish Pixels

Cosmic radiation may cause random pixels to generate a permanently high charge, resulting in a permanently lit, or 'glowing,' appearance. Point Grey tests for and programs white blemish pixel correction into the camera firmware. For more information, see *Blemish Pixel Defect Correction* ([page 111](#)).

### Vertical Smear

When a strong light source is shone on the camera, a faint bright line may be seen extending vertically through an image from a light-saturated spot. Vertical smear is a byproduct of the interline



transfer system that extracts data from the CCD. More information and suggestions for troubleshooting are presented in Knowledge Base Article 88 (<http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/index.asp?a=4&q=88>)

### Dead / Hot Pixels

In very rare cases, one or more pixels in the sensor array may stop responding. Pixels may appear black (dead) or white (hot/stuck).

## 8.3 Error Status Registers

### VMODE\_ERROR\_STATUS: 628h

This register is used by the camera to report any camera configuration errors. If an error has occurred, no image data will be sent by the camera.

#### Format:

| Field              | Bit    | Description  |
|--------------------|--------|--|
| Vmode_Error_Status | [0]    | Error status of combination of video format, mode, frame rate and ISO_SPEED setting.<br>0: no error<br>1: error<br>This flag will be updated every time one of the above settings is changed by writing a new value. |
|                    | [1-31] | Reserved.  |

### XMIT\_FAILURE: 12FCh

This register contains a count of the number of failed frame transmissions that have occurred since the last reset. An error occurs if the camera cannot arbitrate for the bus to transmit image data and the image data FIFO overflows.

#### Format:

| Field        | Bit    | Description   |
|--------------|--------|---|
| Presence_Inq | [0]    | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available             |
| Frame_Count  | [1-31] | Read: Count of failed frame transmissions.<br>Write: Reset. |

### CAMERA\_LOG: 1D00 – 1DFFh

This register provides access to the camera's 256 byte internal message log, which is often useful for debugging camera problems. Characters are hexadecimal representations of ASCII characters. Contact technical support for interpretation of message logs.

#### Format:

| Offset     | Description   |
|------------|---|
| 1D00..1DFF | Each byte is the hexadecimal representation of an ASCII |

| Offset | Description   |
|--------|---|
|        | character. The log is in reverse byte order, with the latest entry at the beginning of the log. The most significant byte of address 1D00h is the last byte in the log. |

# Appendix A: General Register Information

## Register Memory Map

The IEEE-1394 specification uses a 64-bit fixed addressing model. The upper 10 bits show the Bus ID, and the next six bits show the Node ID. The next 20 bits must be 1 (FFFF Fh).

| Address   | Register Name   | Description  |
|---|---|--|
| FFFF F000 0000h   | 1394 Base address                                     |  |
| FFFF F000 0400h   | Config ROM  |  |
| FFFF F0F0 0000h   | Base address for all camera control command registers |  |
| The following register addresses are offset from the base address, FFFF F0F0 0000h. |   |  |
| 000h  | INITIALIZE  | Camera initialize register                             |
| 100h  | V_FORMAT_INQ  | Inquiry register for video format                      |
| 180h  | V_MODE_INQ_X  | Inquiry register for video mode                        |
| 200h  | V_RATE_INQ_y_X  | Inquiry register for video frame rate                  |
| 300h  | Reserved  |  |
| 400h  | BASIC_FUNC_INQ<br>FEATURE_HI_INQ<br>FEATURE_LO_INQ    | Inquiry register for feature presence                  |
| 500h  | Feature_Name_INQ                                      | Inquiry register for feature elements                  |
| 600h  | CAM_STA_CTRL  | Status and control register for camera                 |
| 640h  |   | Feature control error status register                  |
| 700h  | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_x                                      | Inquiry register for Absolute value CSR offset address |
| 800h  | Feature_Name  | Status and control register for feature                |

The FlyCapture API library has function calls to get and set camera register values. These function calls automatically take into account the base address. For example, to get the 32-bit value of the SHUTTER register at 0xFFFF F0F0 081C:

FlyCapture v1.x:

```
flycaptureGetCameraRegister(context, 0x81C, &ulValue);
```

FlyCapture v2.x (assuming a camera object named cam):

```
cam.ReadRegister(0x81C, &regVal);
```

## Config ROM

### Root Directory

|                | Offset | Bit     | Description               |
|----------------|--------|---------|---------------------------|
| Bus Info Block | 400h   | [0-7]   | 04h                       |
|                |        | [8-15]  | crc_length                |
|                |        | [16-31] | rom_crc_value             |
|                | 404h   | [0-7]   | 31h                       |
|                |        | [8-15]  | 33h                       |
|                |        | [16-23] | 39h                       |
|                |        | [24-31] | 34h                       |
|                | 408h   | [0-3]   | 0010 (binary)             |
|                |        | [4-7]   | Reserved                  |
|                |        | [8-15]  | FFh                       |
|                |        | [16-19] | max_rec                   |
|                |        | [20]    | Reserved                  |
|                |        | [21-23] | mxrom                     |
|                |        | [24-31] | chip_id_hi                |
|                | 40Ch   | [0-23]  | node_vendor_id            |
|                |        | [24-31] | chip_id_hi                |
|                | 410h   | [0-31]  | chip_id_lo                |
| Root Directory | 414h   | [0-15]  | 0004h                     |
|                |        | [16-31] | CRC                       |
|                | 418h   | [0-7]   | 03h                       |
|                |        | [8-31]  | module_vendor_id          |
|                | 41Ch   | [0-7]   | 0Ch                       |
|                |        | [8-15]  | Reserved                  |
|                |        | [16-31] | 1000001111000000 (binary) |
|                | 420h   | [0-7]   | 8Dh                       |
|                |        | [8-31]  | indirect_offset           |
|                | 424h   | [0-7]   | D1h                       |
|                |        | [8-31]  | unit_directory_offset     |

## Unit Directory

|                | Offset | Bit     | Description                     |
|----------------|--------|---------|---------------------------------|
| Unit Directory | 0000h  | [0-15]  | 0003h                           |
|                |        | [16-31] | CRC                             |
|                | 0004h  | [0-7]   | 12h                             |
|                |        | [8-31]  | unit_spec_ID (=0x00A02D)        |
|                | 0008h  | [0-7]   | 13h                             |
|                |        | [8-31]  | unit_sw_version (=0x000102)     |
|                | 000Ch  | [0-7]   | D4h                             |
|                |        | [8-31]  | unit dependent directory offset |

## Unit Dependent Info

|                     | Offset | Bit     | Description          |
|---------------------|--------|---------|----------------------|
| Unit Dependent Info | 0000h  | [0-15]  | unit_dep_info_length |
|                     |        | [16-31] | CRC                  |
|                     | 0004h  | [0-7]   | 40h                  |
|                     |        | [8-31]  | command_regs_base    |
|                     | 0008h  | [0-7]   | 81h                  |
|                     |        | [8-31]  | vendor_name_leaf     |
|                     | 000Ch  | [0-7]   | 82h                  |
|                     |        | [8-31]  | model_name_leaf      |
|                     | 0010h  | [0-7]   | 38h                  |
|                     |        | [8-31]  | unit_sub_sw_version  |
|                     | 0014h  | [0-7]   | 39h                  |
|                     |        | [8-31]  | Reserved             |
|                     | 0018h  | [0-7]   | 3Ah                  |
|                     |        | [8-31]  | Reserved             |
|                     | 001Ch  | [0-7]   | 3Bh                  |
|                     |        | [8-31]  | Reserved             |
|                     | 0020h  | [0-7]   | 3Ch                  |
|                     |        | [8-31]  | vendor_unique_info_0 |
|                     | 0024h  | [0-7]   | 3Dh                  |
|                     |        | [8-31]  | vendor_unique_info_1 |
|                     | 0028h  | [0-7]   | 3Eh                  |
|                     |        | [8-31]  | vendor_unique_info_2 |
|                     | 002Ch  | [0-7]   | 3Fh                  |
|                     |        | [8-31]  | vendor_unique_info_3 |

- *command\_regs\_base* is the quadlet offset from the base address of initial register space of the base address of the command registers.
- *vendor\_name\_leaf* specifies the number of quadlets from the address of the *vendor\_name\_leaf* entry to the address of the *vendor\_name* leaf containing an ASCII representation of the vendor name of this node.
- *model\_name\_leaf* specifies the number of quadlets from the address of the *model\_name\_leaf* entry to the address of the *model\_name* leaf containing an ASCII representation of the model name of this node.
- *unit\_sub\_sw\_version* specifies the sub version information of this unit:
  - *unit\_sub\_sw\_version* = 0x000000h or unspecified for IIDC v1.30
  - *unit\_sub\_sw\_version* = 0x000010h for IIDC v1.31
  - *unit\_sub\_sw\_version* = 0x000020h for IIDC v1.32

## Calculating Register Addresses using Quadlet Offsets

The addresses for many IIDC control and status registers (CSR's), such as those that provide control over absolute values, Format\_7 video modes, PIO, SIO and strobe output, vary between camera manufacturers. In order to provide a common mechanism across camera models for determining the location of these CSR's relative to the 1394 base address, the IIDC specification provides fixed locations for inquiry registers that contain quadlet offsets, or pointers, to the actual offsets.

For example, the Absolute Value CSR's provide minimum, maximum and current real-world values for camera properties such as gain, shutter, etc., as described in *Absolute Value CSR Registers* on [page 151](#). To determine the location of the shutter absolute value registers (code snippets use function calls included in the FlyCapture SDK, and assume a `Camera` object `cam`):

1. Read the `ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_7` register 71Ch to obtain the quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for shutter.

```
unsigned int ulValue;

cam.ReadRegister(0x71C, &ulValue);
```

2. The 32-bit `ulValue` is a quadlet offset, so multiply by 4 to get the actual offset.

```
ulValue = ulValue * 4; // ulValue == 0x3C0244, actual offset ==
0xF00910
```

3. The actual offset `0xF00910` represents the offset from the base address `0xFFFF Fxxx xxxx`. Since the PGR FlyCapture API automatically takes into account the base offset `0xFFFF F0F0 0000`, the actual offset in this example would be `0x910`.

```
ulValue = ulValue & 0xFFFF;
```

## Appendix B: Inquiry Registers

### Inquiry Registers for Video Format / Mode / Frame Rate

The following registers may be used to determine the video formats, modes and frame rates that are available with the camera.

(Bit values = 0: Not Available, 1: Available)

#### Video Format Inquiry Registers

##### **Format:**

| Offset | Name         | Field    | Bit    | Description  |
|--------|--------------|----------|--------|--|
| 100h   | V_FORMAT_INQ | Format_0 | [0]    | VGA non-compressed format (160x120 through 640x480)              |
|        |              | Format_1 | [1]    | Super VGA non-compressed format (1) (800x600 through 1024x768)   |
|        |              | Format_2 | [2]    | Super VGA non-compressed format (2) (1280x960 through 1600x1200) |
|        |              | Format_x | [3-5]  | Reserved for other formats                                       |
|        |              | Format_6 | [6]    | Still Image Format   |
|        |              | Format_7 | [7]    | Partial Image Size Format  |
|        |              |          | [8-31] | Reserved   |

Video Mode Inquiry Registers**Format:**

| Offset            | Name                       | Field  | Bit    | Description                              |
|-------------------|----------------------------|--------|--------|--|
| 180h              | V_MODE_INQ_0<br>(Format 0) | Mode_0 | [0]    | 160x120 YUV(4:4:4) Mode (24bit/pixel)    |
|                   |                            | Mode_1 | [1]    | 320x240 YUV(4:2:2) Mode (16bit/pixel)    |
|                   |                            | Mode_2 | [2]    | 640x480 YUV(4:1:1) Mode (12bit/pixel)    |
|                   |                            | Mode_3 | [3]    | 640x480 YUV(4:2:2) Mode (16bit/pixel)    |
|                   |                            | Mode_4 | [4]    | 640x480 RGB Mode (24bit/pixel)           |
|                   |                            | Mode_5 | [5]    | 640x480 Y8 (Mono) Mode (8bit/pixel)      |
|                   |                            | Mode_6 | [6]    | 640x480 Y16 (Mono16) Mode (16bit/pixel)  |
|                   |                            |        | [7-31] | Reserved                                 |
| 184h              | V_MODE_INQ_1<br>(Format 1) | Mode_0 | [0]    | 800x600 YUV(4:2:2) Mode (16bit/pixel)    |
|                   |                            | Mode_1 | [1]    | 800x600 RGB Mode (24bit/pixel)           |
|                   |                            | Mode_2 | [2]    | 800x600 Y (Mono) Mode (8bit/pixel)       |
|                   |                            | Mode_3 | [3]    | 1024x768 YUV(4:2:2) Mode (16bit/pixel)   |
|                   |                            | Mode_4 | [4]    | 1024x768 RGB Mode (24bit/pixel)          |
|                   |                            | Mode_5 | [5]    | 1024x768 Y (Mono) Mode (8bit/pixel)      |
|                   |                            | Mode_6 | [6]    | 800x600 Y (Mono16) Mode (16bit/pixel)    |
|                   |                            | Mode_7 | [7]    | 1024x768 Y (Mono16) Mode (16bit/pixel)   |
|                   |                            |        | [8-31] | Reserved                                 |
| 188h              | V_MODE_INQ_2<br>(Format 2) | Mode_0 | [0]    | 1280x960 YUV(4:2:2) Mode (16bit/pixel)   |
|                   |                            | Mode_1 | [1]    | 1280x960 RGB Mode (24bit/pixel)          |
|                   |                            | Mode_2 | [2]    | 1280x960 Y (Mono) Mode (8bit/pixel)      |
|                   |                            | Mode_3 | [3]    | 1600x1200 YUV(4:2:2) Mode (16bit/pixel)  |
|                   |                            | Mode_4 | [4]    | 1600x1200 RGB Mode (24bit/pixel)         |
|                   |                            | Mode_5 | [5]    | 1600x1200 Y (Mono) Mode (8bit/pixel)     |
|                   |                            | Mode_6 | [6]    | 1280x960 Y (Mono16) Mode (16bit/pixel)   |
|                   |                            | Mode_7 | [7]    | 1600X 1200 Y (Mono16) Mode (16bit/pixel) |
|                   |                            |        | [8-31] | Reserved                                 |
| 18Ch<br>:<br>197h | Reserved                   |        |        |  |



| Offset | Name                       | Field  | Bit    | Description     |
|--------|----------------------------|--------|--------|-----------------|
| 19Ch   | V_MODE_INQ_7<br>(Format 7) | Mode_0 | [0]    | Format_7 Mode_0 |
|        |                            | Mode_1 | [1]    | Format_7 Mode_1 |
|        |                            | Mode_2 | [2]    | Format_7 Mode_2 |
|        |                            | Mode_3 | [3]    | Format_7 Mode_3 |
|        |                            | Mode_4 | [4]    | Format_7 Mode_4 |
|        |                            | Mode_5 | [5]    | Format_7 Mode_5 |
|        |                            | Mode_6 | [6]    | Format_7 Mode_6 |
|        |                            | Mode_7 | [7]    | Format_7 Mode_7 |
|        |                            |        | [8-31] | Reserved        |

### Video Frame Rate Inquiry Registers

This set of registers allows the user to query the available frame rates for all Formats and Modes.

#### Format:

| Offset | Name                                 | Field       | Bit    | Description |
|--------|--------------------------------------|-------------|--------|-------------|
| 200h   | V_RATE_INQ_0_0<br>(Format 0, Mode 0) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | 240fps      |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 204h   | V_RATE_INQ_0_1<br>(Format 0, Mode 1) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | 240fps      |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 208h   | V_RATE_INQ_0_2<br>(Format 0, Mode 2) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |

| Offset | Name                                 | Field       | Bit    | Description |
|--------|--------------------------------------|-------------|--------|-------------|
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | 240fps      |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 20Ch   | V_RATE_INQ_0_3<br>(Format 0, Mode 3) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | 240fps      |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 210h   | V_RATE_INQ_0_4<br>(Format 0, Mode 4) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | 240fps      |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 214h   | V_RATE_INQ_0_5<br>(Format 0, Mode 5) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |

| Offset            | Name                                 | Field       | Bit    | Description |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|--------|-------------|
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | 240fps      |
|                   |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 218h              | V_RATE_INQ_0_6<br>(Format 0, Mode 6) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | 240fps      |
|                   |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 21Ch<br>:<br>21Fh | Reserved                             |             |        |             |
| 220h              | V_RATE_INQ_1_0<br>(Format 1, Mode 0) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | Reserved    |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | 240fps      |
|                   |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 224h              | V_RATE_INQ_1_1<br>(Format 1, Mode 1) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | Reserved    |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | Reserved    |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | Reserved    |
|                   |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 228h              | V_RATE_INQ_1_2<br>(Format 1, Mode 2) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | Reserved    |

| Offset | Name                                 | Field       | Bit    | Description |
|--------|--------------------------------------|-------------|--------|-------------|
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | 240fps      |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 22Ch   | V_RATE_INQ_1_3<br>(Format 1, Mode 3) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 230h   | V_RATE_INQ_1_4<br>(Format 1, Mode 4) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 234h   | V_RATE_INQ_1_5<br>(Format 1, Mode 5) | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | 240fps      |

| Offset | Name                                 | Field       | Bit    | Description |
|--------|--------------------------------------|-------------|--------|-------------|
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 238h   | V_RATE_INQ_1_6<br>(Format 1, Mode 6) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | 240fps      |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 23Ch   | V_RATE_INQ_1_7<br>(Format 1, Mode 7) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 240h   | V_RATE_INQ_2_0<br>(Format 2, Mode 0) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 244h   | V_RATE_INQ_2_1<br>(Format 2, Mode 1) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |

| Offset | Name                                 | Field       | Bit    | Description |
|--------|--------------------------------------|-------------|--------|-------------|
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 248h   | V_RATE_INQ_2_2<br>(Format 2, Mode 2) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 24Ch   | V_RATE_INQ_2_3<br>(Format 2, Mode 3) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 250h   | V_RATE_INQ_2_4<br>(Format 2, Mode 4) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps      |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps       |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | Reserved    |
|        |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved    |
| 254h   | V_RATE_INQ_2_5<br>(Format 2, Mode 5) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps    |
|        |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps     |

| Offset            | Name                                 | Field       | Bit    | Description                            |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|--------|--|
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps                                 |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps                                  |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps                                  |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps                                  |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | 120fps                                 |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | Reserved                               |
|                   |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved                               |
| 258h              | V_RATE_INQ_2_6<br>(Format 2, Mode 6) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps                               |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps                                |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps                                 |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps                                  |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps                                  |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps                                  |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | Reserved                               |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | Reserved                               |
|                   |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved                               |
| 25Ch              | V_RATE_INQ_2_7<br>(Format 2, Mode 7) | FrameRate_0 | [0]    | 1.875fps                               |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_1 | [1]    | 3.75fps                                |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_2 | [2]    | 7.5fps                                 |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_3 | [3]    | 15fps                                  |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_4 | [4]    | 30fps                                  |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_5 | [5]    | 60fps                                  |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_6 | [6]    | Reserved                               |
|                   |                                      | FrameRate_7 | [7]    | Reserved                               |
|                   |                                      |             | [8-31] | Reserved                               |
| 260h<br>:<br>2BFh | Reserved                             |             |        |  |
| 2E0h              | V_CSR_INQ_7_0                        | Mode_0      | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_0 |
| 2E4h              | V_CSR_INQ_7_1                        | Mode_1      | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_1 |
| 2E8h              | V_CSR_INQ_7_2                        | Mode_2      | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_2 |
| 2ECh              | V_CSR_INQ_7_3                        | Mode_3      | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_3 |

| Offset | Name           | Field   | Bit    | Description                             |
|--------|----------------|---------|--------|---|
| 2F0h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_4  | Mode_4  | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_4  |
| 2F4h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_5  | Mode_5  | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_5  |
| 2F8h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_6  | Mode_6  | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_6  |
| 2FCh   | V_CSR_INQ_7_7  | Mode_7  | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_7  |
| 300h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_8  | Mode_8  | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_8  |
| 304h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_9  | Mode_9  | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_9  |
| 308h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_10 | Mode_10 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_10 |
| 30Ch   | V_CSR_INQ_7_11 | Mode_11 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_11 |
| 310h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_12 | Mode_12 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_12 |
| 314h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_13 | Mode_13 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_13 |
| 318h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_14 | Mode_14 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_14 |
| 31Ch   | V_CSR_INQ_7_15 | Mode_15 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_15 |
| 320h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_16 | Mode_16 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_16 |
| 324h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_17 | Mode_17 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_17 |
| 328h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_18 | Mode_18 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_18 |
| 32Ch   | V_CSR_INQ_7_19 | Mode_19 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_19 |
| 330h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_20 | Mode_20 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_20 |
| 334h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_21 | Mode_21 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_21 |
| 338h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_22 | Mode_22 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_22 |
| 33Ch   | V_CSR_INQ_7_23 | Mode_23 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_23 |



| Offset | Name           | Field   | Bit    | Description                             |
|--------|----------------|---------|--------|---|
| 340h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_24 | Mode_24 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_24 |
| 344h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_25 | Mode_25 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_25 |
| 348h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_26 | Mode_26 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_26 |
| 34Ch   | V_CSR_INQ_7_27 | Mode_27 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_27 |
| 350h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_28 | Mode_28 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_28 |
| 354h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_29 | Mode_29 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_29 |
| 358h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_30 | Mode_30 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_30 |
| 35Ch   | V_CSR_INQ_7_31 | Mode_31 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_31 |

### Inquiry Registers for Basic Functions

The following registers show which IIDC-compliant basic functions are implemented on the camera.

(Bit values = 0: Not Available, 1: Available)

**Format:**

| Offset | Name           | Field                            | Bit     | Description   |
|--------|----------------|----------------------------------|---------|---|
| 400h   | BASIC_FUNC_INQ | Advanced_Feature_Inq             | [0]     | Inquiry for advanced feature. (Vendor Unique Features)  |
|        |                | Vmode_Error_Status_Inq           | [1]     | Inquiry for existence of Vmode_Error_Status register  |
|        |                | Feature_Control_Error_Status_Inq | [2]     | Inquiry for existence of Feature_Control_Error_Status register  |
|        |                | Opt_Func_CSR_Inq                 | [3]     | Inquiry for optional function CSR.  |
|        |                |                                  | [4-7]   | Reserved  |
|        |                | 1394.b_mode_Capability           | [8]     | Inquiry for 1394.b mode capability  |
|        |                |                                  | [9-15]  | Reserved  |
|        |                | Cam_Power_Cntl                   | [16]    | Camera process power ON/OFF capability  |
|        |                |                                  | [17-18] | Reserved  |
|        |                | One_Shot_Inq                     | [19]    | One shot transmission capability  |
|        |                | Multi_Shot_Inq                   | [20]    | Multi shot transmission capability  |
|        |                | Retransmit_Inq                   | [21]    | Retransmit latest image capability (One_shot/Retransmit)  |
|        |                | Image_Buffer_Inq                 | [22]    | Image buffer capability (Multi_shot/Image_Buffer)   |
|        |                |                                  | [23-27] | Reserved  |
|        |                | Memory_Channel                   | [28-31] | Maximum memory channel number (N)<br>Memory channel no<br>0 = Factory setting memory<br>1 = Memory Ch 1<br>2 = Memory Ch 2<br>:<br>N= Memory Ch N<br>If 0000, user memory is not available. |

**Inquiry Registers for Feature Presence**

The following registers show the presence of the IIDC-compliant camera features or optional functions implemented on the camera.

(Bit values = 0: Not Available, 1: Available)

**Format:**

| Offset | Name             | Field           | Bit     | Description                        |
|--------|------------------|-----------------|---------|------------------------------------|
| 404h   | Feature_Hi_Inq   | Brightness      | [0]     | Brightness Control                 |
|        |                  | Auto_Exposure   | [1]     | Auto Exposure Control              |
|        |                  | Sharpness       | [2]     | Sharpness Control                  |
|        |                  | White_Balance   | [3]     | White Balance Control              |
|        |                  | Hue             | [4]     | Hue Control                        |
|        |                  | Saturation      | [5]     | Saturation Control                 |
|        |                  | Gamma           | [6]     | Gamma Control                      |
|        |                  | Shutter         | [7]     | Shutter Speed Control              |
|        |                  | Gain            | [8]     | Gain Control                       |
|        |                  | Iris            | [9]     | IRIS Control                       |
|        |                  | Focus           | [10]    | Focus Control                      |
|        |                  | Temperature     | [11]    | Temperature Control                |
|        |                  | Trigger         | [12]    | Trigger Control                    |
|        |                  | Trigger_Delay   | [13]    | Trigger Delay Control              |
|        |                  | White_Shading   | [14]    | White Shading Compensation Control |
|        |                  | Frame_Rate      | [15]    | Frame rate prioritize control      |
|        |                  |                 | [16-31] | Reserved                           |
| 408h   | Feature_Lo_Inq   | Zoom            | [0]     | Zoom Control                       |
|        |                  | Pan             | [1]     | Pan Control                        |
|        |                  | Tilt            | [2]     | Tilt Control                       |
|        |                  | Optical Filter  | [3]     | Optical Filter Control             |
|        |                  |                 | [4-15]  | Reserved                           |
|        |                  | Capture_Size    | [16]    | Capture image size for Format_6    |
|        |                  | Capture_Quality | [17]    | Capture image quality for Format_6 |
|        |                  |                 | [18-31] | Reserved                           |
| 40Ch   | Opt_Function_Inq | -               | [0]     | Reserved                           |

| Offset    | Name                  | Field                           | Bit    | Description  |
|-----------|-----------------------|---------------------------------|--------|--|
|           |                       | PIO                             | [1]    | Parallel input/output control  |
|           |                       | SIO                             | [2]    | Serial Input/output control  |
|           |                       | Strobe_Out-put                  | [3]    | Strobe signal output   |
|           |                       | Lookup_ Table                   | [4]    | Lookup table control   |
|           |                       | -                               | [5-31] | Reserved   |
| 410h-47Fh | Reserved              |                                 |        |  |
| 480h      | Advanced_Feature_Inq  | Advanced_Feature_Quadlet_Offset | [0-31] | Quadlet offset of the advanced feature CSR's (see the Advanced Registers section) from the base address of initial register space. (Vendor unique) |
| 484h      | PIO_Control_CSR_Inq   | PIO_Control_Quadlet_Offset      | [0-31] | Quadlet offset of the PIO control CSR's (see the Parallel Input/Output (PIO) section) from the base address of initial register space.             |
| 488h      | SIO_Control_CSR_Inq   | SIO_Control_Quadlet_Offset      | [0-31] | Quadlet offset of the SIO control CSR's (see the Serial Port Input/Output (SIO) section) from the base address of initial register space.          |
| 48Ch      | Strobe_Output_CSR_Inq | Strobe_Output_Quadlet_Offset    | [0-31] | Quadlet offset of the strobe output signal CSR's (see the Strobe Signal Output section) from the base address of initial register space.           |
| 490h      | Lookup_Table_CSR_Inq  | Lookup_Table_Quadlet_Offset     | [0-31] | Quadlet offset of the Lookup Table CSRs from the base address of initial register space.   |

### Inquiry Registers for Feature Elements

The following registers show the presence of specific features, modes and minimum and maximum values for each of the IIDC-compliant camera features or optional functions implemented by the camera.

(Bit values = 0: Not Available, 1: Available)

#### **Format:**

| Offset | Name           | Field           | Bit | Description   |
|--------|----------------|-----------------|-----|---|
| 500h   | BRIGHTNESS_INQ | Presence_Inq    | [0] | Presence of this feature  |
|        |                | Abs_Control_Inq | [1] | Absolute value control  |
|        |                |                 | [2] | Reserved  |
|        |                | One_Push_Inq    | [3] | One push auto mode (controlled automatically by camera only once) |

| Offset | Name              | Field                                      | Bit     | Description                                    |
|--------|-------------------|--|---------|--|
|        |                   | ReadOut_Inq                                | [4]     | Ability to read the value of this feature      |
|        |                   | On_Off_Inq                                 | [5]     | Ability to switch feature ON and OFF           |
|        |                   | Auto_Inq                                   | [6]     | Auto mode (controlled automatically by camera) |
|        |                   | Manual_Inq                                 | [7]     | Manual mode (controlled by user)               |
|        |                   | Min_Value                                  | [8-19]  | Minimum value for this feature control         |
|        |                   | Max_Value                                  | [20-31] | Maximum value for this feature control         |
| 504h   | AUTO_EXPOSURE_INQ | Same format as the BRIGHTNESS_INQ register |         |  |
| 508h   | SHARPNESS_INQ     | Same format as the BRIGHTNESS_INQ register |         |  |
| 50Ch   | WHITE_BALANCE_INQ | Same format as the BRIGHTNESS_INQ register |         |  |
| 510h   | HUE_INQ           | Same format as the BRIGHTNESS_INQ register |         |  |
| 514h   | SATURATION_INQ    | Same format as the BRIGHTNESS_INQ register |         |  |
| 518h   | GAMMA_INQ         | Same format as the BRIGHTNESS_INQ register |         |  |
| 51Ch   | SHUTTER_INQ       | Same format as the BRIGHTNESS_INQ register |         |  |
| 520h   | GAIN_INQ          | Same format as the BRIGHTNESS_INQ register |         |  |
| 524h   | IRIS_INQ          | Same format as the BRIGHTNESS_INQ register |         |  |
| 528h   | FOCUS_INQ         | Same format as the BRIGHTNESS_INQ register |         |  |
| 52Ch   | TEMPERATURE_INQ   | Same format as the BRIGHTNESS_INQ register |         |  |
| 530h   | TRIGGER_INQ       | Presence_Inq                               | [0]     | Presence of this feature                       |
|        |                   | Abs_Control_Inq                            | [1]     | Absolute value control                         |
|        |                   |  | [2-3]   | Reserved                                       |
|        |                   | ReadOut_Inq                                | [4]     | Ability to read the value of this feature      |
|        |                   | On_Off_Inq                                 | [5]     | Ability to switch feature ON and OFF           |
|        |                   | Polarity_Inq                               | [6]     | Ability to change trigger input polarity       |
|        |                   | Value_Read_Inq                             | [7]     | Ability to read raw trigger input              |
|        |                   | Trigger_Source0_Inq                        | [8]     | Presence of Trigger Source 0 ID=0              |

| Offset | Name            | Field                | Bit     | Description   |
|--------|-----------------|----------------------|---------|---|
|        |                 | Trigger_Source1_Inq  | [9]     | Presence of Trigger Source 1 ID=1                                 |
|        |                 | Trigger_Source2_Inq  | [10]    | Presence of Trigger Source 2 ID=2                                 |
|        |                 | Trigger_Source3_Inq  | [11]    | Presence of Trigger Source 3 ID=3                                 |
|        |                 |                      | [12-14] | Reserved ID=4-6   |
|        |                 | Software_Trigger_Inq | [15]    | Presence of Software Trigger ID=7                                 |
|        |                 | Trigger_Mode0_Inq    | [16]    | Presence of Trigger Mode 0  |
|        |                 | Trigger_Mode1_Inq    | [17]    | Presence of Trigger Mode 1  |
|        |                 | Trigger_Mode2_Inq    | [18]    | Presence of Trigger Mode 2  |
|        |                 | Trigger_Mode3_Inq    | [19]    | Presence of Trigger Mode 3  |
|        |                 | Trigger_Mode4_Inq    | [20]    | Presence of Trigger Mode 4  |
|        |                 | Trigger_Mode5_Inq    | [21]    | Presence of Trigger Mode 5  |
|        |                 |                      | [22-29] | Reserved  |
|        |                 | Trigger_Mode14_Inq   | [30]    | Presence of Trigger Mode 14 (Vendor unique trigger mode 0)        |
|        |                 | Trigger_Mode15_Inq   | [31]    | Presence of Trigger Mode 15 (Vendor unique trigger mode 1)        |
| 534h   | TRIGGER_DLY_INQ | Presence_Inq         | [0]     | Presence of this feature  |
|        |                 | Abs_Control_Inq      | [1]     | Absolute value control  |
|        |                 |                      | [2]     | Reserved  |
|        |                 | One_Push_Inq         | [3]     | One push auto mode (controlled automatically by camera only once) |
|        |                 | ReadOut_Inq          | [4]     | Ability to read the value of this feature                         |
|        |                 | On_Off_Inq           | [5]     | Ability to switch feature ON and OFF                              |

| Offset            | Name                              | Field                                      | Bit     | Description   |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|--|---------|---|
|                   |                                   |  | [6-7]   | Reserved  |
|                   |                                   | Min_Value                                  | [8-19]  | Minimum value for this feature control                            |
|                   |                                   | Max_Value                                  | [20-31] | Maximum value for this feature control                            |
| 538h              | WHITE_SHD_INQ                     | Same format as the BRIGHTNESS_INQ register |         |   |
| 53Ch              | FRAME_RATE_INQ                    | Same format as the BRIGHTNESS_INQ register |         |   |
| 540h<br>:<br>57Ch | Reserved for other FEATURE_HI_INQ |  |         |   |
| 580h              | ZOOM_INQ                          | Presence_Inq                               | [0]     | Presence of this feature  |
|                   |                                   | Abs_Control_Inq                            | [1]     | Absolute value control  |
|                   |                                   |  | [2]     | Reserved  |
|                   |                                   | One_Push_Inq                               | [3]     | One push auto mode (controlled automatically by camera only once) |
|                   |                                   | ReadOut_Inq                                | [4]     | Ability to read the value of this feature                         |
|                   |                                   | On_Off_Inq                                 | [5]     | Ability to switch feature ON and OFF                              |
|                   |                                   | Auto_Inq                                   | [6]     | Auto mode (controlled automatically by camera)                    |
|                   |                                   | Manual_Inq                                 | [7]     | Manual mode (controlled by user)                                  |
|                   |                                   | Min_Value                                  | [8-19]  | Minimum value for this feature control                            |
|                   |                                   | Max_Value                                  | [20-31] | Maximum value for this feature control                            |
| 584h              | PAN_INQ                           | Same format as the ZOOM_INQ register       |         |   |
| 588h              | TILT_INQ                          | Same format as the ZOOM_INQ register       |         |   |
| 58Ch              | OPTICAL_FILTER_INQ                | Same format as the ZOOM_INQ register       |         |   |

## Appendix C: Video Mode Control and Status Registers for Format\_7

These registers provide Format\_7, Mode\_x (Partial Image Size Format) information.

### Inquiry Registers for Format\_7 CSR Offset Addresses

The following set of registers indicates the locations of the Format\_7 Mode\_x CSR registers. These offsets are relative to the base offset 0xFFFF F0F0 0000.

| Offset | Name          | Field  | Bit    | Description                            |
|--------|---------------|--------|--------|--|
| 2E0h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_0 | Mode_0 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_0 |
| 2E4h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_1 | Mode_1 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_1 |
| 2E8h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_2 | Mode_2 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_2 |
| 2ECh   | V_CSR_INQ_7_3 | Mode_3 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_3 |
| 2F0h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_4 | Mode_4 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_4 |
| 2F4h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_5 | Mode_5 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_5 |
| 2F8h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_6 | Mode_6 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_6 |
| 2FCh   | V_CSR_INQ_7_7 | Mode_7 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_7 |
| 300h   | V_CSR_INQ_7_8 | Mode_8 | [0-31] | CSR quadlet offset for Format_7 Mode_8 |

**Table C.1: Format\_7 Inquiry Register Offset Addresses**

### Current Format\_7 Register Offsets

The actual offsets that are derived using the quadlet offset information in *Inquiry Registers for Format\_7 CSR Offset Addresses* (page 144) are as follows:



*The following table of Format\_7 offsets is current as of the revision date. These offsets are subject to change without notice.*

| Offset Range  | Description                      |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| 2000h - 207Ch | Format_7 Mode_0 register offsets |
| 2080h - 20FCh | Format_7 Mode_1 register offsets |
| 2100h - 217Ch | Format_7 Mode_2 register offsets |
| 2180h - 21FCh | Format_7 Mode_3 register offsets |
| 2200h - 227Ch | Format_7 Mode_4 register offsets |
| 2280h - 22FCh | Format_7 Mode_5 register offsets |



| Offset Range  | Description                      |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| 2300h - 237Ch | Format_7 Mode_6 register offsets |
| 2380h - 23FCh | Format_7 Mode_7 register offsets |
| 2400h - 247Ch | Format_7 Mode_8 register offsets |

### FORMAT 7 RESIZE INQ: 1AC8h

This register reports all internal camera processes being used to generate images in the current Format 7 mode. For example, users can read this register to determine if pixel binning and/or subsampling is being used to achieve a non-standard custom image size.

This register is read-only.

#### **Format:**

| Field        | Bit     | Description   |
|--------------|---------|---|
| Presence_Inq | [0]     | Presence of this feature<br>0: N/A 1: Available   |
|              | [1-7]   | Reserved  |
| Num_Cols     | [8-11]  | Number of columns being binned / subsampled, minus one e.g. if combining four columns together, this register will report a value of three. |
| Num_Rows     | [12-15] | Number of rows binned / subsampled, minus one e.g. if combining four columns together, this register will report a value of three.          |
|              | [16-23] | Reserved  |
| V_Pre_Color  | [24]    | Vertical subsampling / downsampling performed before color processing<br>0: Off, 1: On  |
| H_Pre_Color  | [25]    | Horizontal subsampling / downsampling performed before color processing<br>0: Off, 1: On  |
| V_Post_Color | [26]    | Vertical subsampling / downsampling performed after color processing<br>0: Off, 1: On   |
| H_Post_Color | [27]    | Horizontal subsampling / downsampling performed after color processing<br>0: Off, 1: On   |
| V_Bin        | [28]    | Standard vertical binning (addition of adjacent lines within horizontal shift register)<br>0: Off, 1: On                                    |
| H_Bin        | [29]    | Standard horizontal binning (addition of adjacent lines within horizontal shift register)<br>0: Off, 1: On                                  |

| Field       | Bit  | Description  |
|-------------|------|--|
| V_Bayer_Bin | [30] | Vertical bayer binning (addition of adjacent even / odd lines within the interline transfer buffer)<br>0: Off, 1: On     |
| H_Bayer_Bin | [31] | Horizontal bayer binning (addition of adjacent even / odd columns within the horizontal shift register)<br>0: Off, 1: On |

**MAX\_IMAGE\_SIZE\_INQ: 000h**

This register is an inquiry register for maximum image size.

**Format:**

| Field | Bit     | Description                     |
|-------|---------|---------------------------------|
| Hmax  | [0-15]  | Maximum horizontal pixel number |
| Vmax  | [16-31] | Maximum vertical pixel number   |

**UNIT\_SIZE\_INQ (004h) and UNIT\_POSITION\_INQ (04Ch)**

This register is an inquiry register for unit size.

$$Hmax = Hunit * n = Hposunit * n3 \text{ (n, n3 are integers)}$$

$$Vmax = Vunit * m = Vposunit * m3 \text{ (m, m3 are integers)}$$

If the read value of Hposunit is 0, Hposunit = Hunit for compatibility with IIDC Rev 1.20.

If the read value of Vposunit is 0, Vposunit = Vunit for compatibility with IIDC Rev 1.20.

**Format (UNIT\_SIZE\_INQ: 004h):**

| Field | Bit     | Description                  |
|-------|---------|------------------------------|
| Hunit | [0-15]  | Horizontal unit pixel number |
| Vunit | [16-31] | Vertical unit pixel number   |

**Format (UNIT\_POSITION\_INQ: 04Ch):**

| Field    | Bit     | Description  |
|----------|---------|--|
| Hposunit | [0-15]  | Horizontal unit pixel number for position<br>If read value of Hposunit is 0, Hposunit = Hunit for compatibility. |
| Vposunit | [16-31] | Vertical unit number for position<br>If read value of Vposunit is 0, Vposunit = Vunit for compatibility.         |

**IMAGE\_POSITION (008h) and IMAGE\_SIZE (00Ch)**

These registers determine an area of required data. All the data must be as follows:

$$\text{Left} = Hposunit * n1$$

$$\text{Top} = Vposunit * m1$$

$Width = Hunit * n2$   
 $Height = Vunit * m2$  ( $n1, n2, m1, m2$  are integers)  
 $Left + Width \leq Hmax$   
 $Top + Height \leq Vmax$

**Format (IMAGE\_POSITION: 008h):**

| Field | Bit     | Description                                      |
|-------|---------|--|
| Left  | [0-15]  | Left position of requested image region (pixels) |
| Top   | [16-31] | Top position of requested image region (pixels)  |

**Format (IMAGE\_SIZE: 00Ch):**

| Field  | Bit     | Description                               |
|--------|---------|---|
| Width  | [0-15]  | Width of requested image region (pixels)  |
| Height | [16-31] | Height of requested image region (pixels) |

**COLOR\_CODING\_ID (010h) and COLOR\_CODING\_INQ (014h)**

The COLOR\_CODING\_INQ register describes available the color-coding capability of the system. Each coding scheme has its own ID number. The required color-coding scheme must be set to COLOR\_CODING\_ID register as the ID number.

**Format (COLOR\_CODING\_ID: 010h):**

| Field     | Bit    | Description                                    |
|-----------|--------|--|
| Coding_ID | [0-7]  | Color coding ID from COLOR_CODING_INQ register |
|           | [8-31] | Reserved (all zero)                            |

**Format (COLOR\_CODING\_INQ: 014h):**

| Field         | Bit     | Description  | ID    |
|---------------|---------|--|-------|
| Mono8         | [0]     | Y only. Y=8bits, non compressed                    | 0     |
| 4:1:1 YUV8    | [1]     | 4:1:1, Y=U=V= 8bits, non compressed                | 1     |
| 4:2:2 YUV8    | [2]     | 4:2:2, Y=U=V=8bits, non compressed                 | 2     |
| 4:4:4 YUV8    | [3]     | 4:4:4, Y=U=V=8bits, non compressed                 | 3     |
| RGB8          | [4]     | R=G=B=8bits, non compressed                        | 4     |
| Mono16        | [5]     | Y only, Y=16bits, non compressed                   | 5     |
| RGB16         | [6]     | R=G=B=16bits, non compressed                       | 6     |
| Signed Mono16 | [7]     | Y only, Y=16 bits, non compressed (signed integer) | 7     |
| Signed RGB16  | [8]     | R=G=B=16 bits, non compressed (signed integer)     | 8     |
| Raw8          | [9]     | Raw data output of color filter sensor, 8 bits     | 9     |
| Raw16         | [10]    | Raw data output of color filter sensor, 16 bits    | 10    |
| Mono12        | [11]    | Y only. Y=12 bits, non compressed                  |       |
| Raw12         | [12]    | Raw data output of color filter sensor, 12 bits    |       |
|               | [13-31] | Reserved (all zero)                                | 11-31 |

PIXEL\_NUMBER\_INQ (034h), TOTAL\_BYTES\_HI\_INQ (038h), and TOTAL\_BYTES\_LO\_INQ (03Ch)

The `PIXEL_NUMBER_INQ` register includes the total number of pixels in the required image area. The `TOTAL_BYTE_INQ` register includes the total number of bytes in the required image area.

If the *Presence* bit in the `VALUE_SETTING` register (page 149) is zero, the values of these registers will be updated by writing the new value to the `IMAGE_POSITION` (page 146), `IMAGE_SIZE` (page 146) and `COLOR_CODING_ID` (page 147) registers.

If the *Presence* bit in the `VALUE_SETTING` register is one, the values of these registers will be updated by writing one to the *Setting\_1* bit in the `VALUE_SETTING` register. If the *ErrorFlag\_1* bit is zero after the *Setting\_1* bit returns to zero, the values of these registers are valid.

**Format (PIXEL\_NUMBER\_INQ: 034h):**

| Field         | Bit    | Description            |
|---------------|--------|------------------------|
| PixelPerFrame | [0-31] | Pixel number per frame |

**Format (TOTAL\_BYTES\_HI\_INQ: 038h):**

| Field           | Bit    | Description   |
|-----------------|--------|---|
| BytesPerFrameHi | [0-31] | Higher quadlet of total bytes of image data per frame |

**Format (TOTAL\_BYTES\_LO\_INQ: 03Ch):**

| Field           | Bit    | Description  |
|-----------------|--------|--|
| BytesPerFrameLo | [0-31] | Lower quadlet of total bytes of image data per frame |

PACKET\_PARA\_INQ (040h) and BYTE\_PER\_PACKET (044h)

*MaxBytePerPacket* describes the maximum packet size for one isochronous packet.

*UnitBytePerPacket* is the unit for isochronous packet size.

*RecBytePerPacket* describes the recommended packet size for one isochronous packet. If *RecBytePerPacket* is zero, you must ignore this field.

If the *Presence* bit in the `VALUE_SETTING` register (page 149) is zero, values of these fields will be updated by writing the new value to the `IMAGE_POSITION` (page 146), `IMAGE_SIZE` (page 146) and `COLOR_CODING_ID` (page 147) registers with the value of the `ISO_Speed` register (60Ch [6..7]).

First, the `ISO_Speed` register must be written. Then the `IMAGE_POSITION`, `IMAGE_SIZE` and `COLOR_CODING_ID` registers should be updated.

If the *Presence* bit in the `VALUE_SETTING` register is one, the values of these fields will be updated by writing one to the *Setting\_1* bit in the `VALUE_SETTING` register. If the *ErrorFlag\_1* bit is zero after the *Setting\_1* bit returns to zero, the values of these fields are valid.

The *BytePerPacket* value determines the real packet size and transmission speed for one frame image. The *BytePerPacket* value must keep the following condition.

$$\text{BytePerPacket} = \text{UnitBytePerPacket} * n \text{ (n is an integer)}$$

BytePerPacket <= MaxBytePerPacket

#### Format (PACKET\_PARA\_INQ: 040h):

| Field             | Bit     | Description              |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------------|
| UnitBytePerPacket | [0-15]  | Minimum bytes per packet |
| MaxBytePerPacket  | [16-31] | Maximum bytes per packet |

#### Format (BYTE\_PER\_PACKET: 044h):

| Field            | Bit     | Description  |
|------------------|---------|--|
| BytePerPacket    | [0-15]  | Packet size  |
| RecBytePerPacket | [16-31] | Recommended bytes per packet. If this value is zero, must ignore this field. |

#### PACKET\_PER\_FRAME\_INQ: 048h

If  $BytePerPacket * n \neq BytePerFrame$  ( $n$  is an integer), you must use padding. The PacketPerFrame value is the number of packets per one frame. This register will be updated after BytePerPacket is written.

The total number of bytes of transmission data per one frame =  $BytePerPacket * PacketPerFrame$ .

The number of bytes of padding =  $BytePerPacket * PacketPerFrame - BytePerFrame$ . The receiver must ignore the above padding data in the last packet of each frame.

#### Format:

| Field          | Bit    | Description                 |
|----------------|--------|-----------------------------|
| PacketPerFrame | [0-31] | Number of packets per frame |

#### FRAME\_INTERVAL\_INQ: 050h

This register describes the frame interval based on the current camera conditions, including exposure time. The reciprocal value of this ( $1 / FrameInterval$ ) is the frame rate of the camera. If the value of this register is zero, the camera can't report this value and it should be ignored. FrameInterval is in seconds and reported in IEEE1394/REAL\*4 floating-point format (see [Determining Absolute Value Register Values](#) (page 154))

#### Format:

| Field         | Bit    | Description  |
|---------------|--------|--|
| FrameInterval | [0-31] | Current frame interval (seconds)<br>(IEEE/REAL*4 floating-point value)<br>If read value of FrameInterval is zero, ignore this field. |

#### VALUE\_SETTING: 07Ch

The purpose of the *Setting\_1* bit is for updating the TOTAL\_BYTES\_HI\_INQ (page 148), TOTAL\_BYTES\_LO\_INQ (page 148) PACKET\_PARA\_INQ (page 148) and BYTE\_PER\_PACKET (page 148) registers. If one of the values in the IMAGE\_POSITION (page 146), IMAGE\_SIZE (page 146) COLOR\_CODING\_ID (page 147) and ISO\_SPEED registers is changed, the *Setting\_1* bit must be

set to 1. The *ErrorFlag\_1* field will be updated when the *Setting\_1* bit returns to 0. If the *ErrorFlag\_1* field is zero, the values of the TOTAL\_BYTES\_HI\_INQ, TOTAL\_BYTES\_LO\_INQ, PACKET\_PARA\_INQ and BYTE\_PER\_PACKET registers are valid.

After the *BytePerPacket* value is written, the *ErrorFlag\_2* field will be updated. If the *ErrorFlag\_2* field is zero, isochronous transmission can be started without any problem.

**Format:**

| Field       | Bit     | Description  |
|-------------|---------|--|
| Presence    | [0]     | If this bit is one, Setting_1 , ErrorFlag_1 and ErrorFlag_2 fields are valid. This bit is read only.   |
| Setting_1   | [1]     | If writing "1" to this bit, IMAGE_POSITION, IMAGE_SIZE, COLOR_CODING_ID and ISO_Speed register value will be reflected in PIXEL_NUMBER_INQ, TOTAL_BYTES_HI_INQ, TOTAL_BYTES_LO_INQ, PACKET_PARA_INQ and BYTE_PER_PACKET registers. This bit is self-cleared. |
|             | [2-7]   | Reserved   |
| ErrorFlag_1 | [8]     | Combination of the values of IMAGE_POSITION, IMAGE_SIZE, COLOR_CODING_ID and ISO_Speed register is not acceptable.<br>0: no error, 1: error<br>This flag will be updated every time when Setting_1 bit returns to "0" from "1".                              |
| ErrorFlag_2 | [9]     | BytePerPacket value is not acceptable.<br>0: no error, 1: error  |
|             | [10-31] | Reserved   |

## Appendix D: Absolute Value Registers

### Inquiry Registers for Absolute Value CSR Offset Addresses

The following set of registers indicates the locations of the absolute value CSR registers. These offsets are relative to the base offset 0xFFFF F0F0 0000.

| Offset      | Name              | Bit     | Description  |
|-------------|-------------------|---------|--|
| 700h        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_0  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Brightness.    |
| 704h        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_1  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Auto Exposure. |
| 708h        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_2  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Sharpness.     |
| 70Ch        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_3  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for White Balance. |
| 710h        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_4  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Hue.           |
| 714h        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_5  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Saturation.    |
| 718h        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_6  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Gamma.         |
| 71Ch        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_7  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Shutter.       |
| 720h        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_8  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Gain.          |
| 724h        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_9  | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Iris.          |
| 728h        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_10 | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Focus.         |
| 72Ch        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_11 | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Temperature.   |
| 730h        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_12 | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Trigger.       |
| 734h        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_13 | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Trigger Delay. |
| 73Ch        | ABS_CSR_HI_INQ_15 | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Frame Rate.    |
| 740h - 77Fh | Reserved          |         |  |

| Offset | Name             | Bit     | Description   |
|--------|------------------|---------|---|
| 7C4h   | ABS_CSR_LO_INQ_1 | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Pan.  |
| 7C8h   | ABS_CSR_LO_INQ_2 | [0..31] | Quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for Tilt. |

### Current Absolute Value Register Offsets

The absolute value offsets that would be derived using the quadlet offset information in the Inquiry Registers for Absolute Value CSR Offset Addresses section would be as follows:



*These offsets are current as of the revision date. They are subject to change without notice.*

| Offset | Name                  | Field     | Bit    | Description                   |
|--------|-----------------------|-----------|--------|-------------------------------|
| 900h   | ABS_VAL_AUTO_EXPOSURE | Min_Value | [0-31] | Min auto exposure value.      |
| 904h   |                       | Max_Value | [0-31] | Max auto exposure value.      |
| 908h   |                       | Value     | [0-31] | Current auto exposure value.  |
| 910h   | ABS_VAL_SHUTTER       | Min_Value | [0-31] | Min shutter value seconds     |
| 914h   |                       | Max_Value | [0-31] | Max shutter value seconds     |
| 918h   |                       | Value     | [0-31] | Current shutter value seconds |
| 920h   | ABS_VAL_GAIN          | Min_Value | [0-31] | Min gain value dB             |
| 924h   |                       | Max_Value | [0-31] | Max gain value dB             |
| 928h   |                       | Value     | [0-31] | Current gain value dB         |
| 930h   | ABS_VAL_BRIGHTNESS    | Min_Value | [0-31] | Min brightness value %        |
| 934h   |                       | Max_Value | [0-31] | Max brightness value %        |
| 938h   |                       | Value     | [0-31] | Current brightness value %    |
| 940h   | ABS_VAL_GAMMA         | Min_Value | [0-31] | Min gamma value               |
| 944h   |                       | Max_Value | [0-31] | Max gamma value               |
| 948h   |                       | Value     | [0-31] | Current gamma value           |
| 950h   | ABS_VAL_TRIGGER_DELAY | Min_Value | [0-31] | Min delay value seconds       |
| 954h   |                       | Max_Value | [0-31] | Max delay value seconds       |
| 958h   |                       | Value     | [0-31] | Current delay value seconds   |
| 960h   | ABS_VAL_FRAME_RATE    | Min_Value | [0-31] | Min frame rate FPS            |
| 964h   |                       | Max_Value | [0-31] | Max frame rate FPS            |
| 968h   |                       | Value     | [0-31] | Current frame rate FPS        |
| 970h   | ABS_VAL_HUE           | Min_Value | [0-31] | Min hue deg                   |
| 974h   |                       | Max_Value | [0-31] | Max hue deg                   |



| Offset | Name               | Field     | Bit    | Description          |
|--------|--------------------|-----------|--------|----------------------|
| 978h   |                    | Value     | [0-31] | Current hue deg      |
| 980h   | ABS_VAL_SATURATION | Min_Value | [0-31] | Min saturation %     |
| 984h   |                    | Max_Value | [0-31] | Max saturation %     |
| 988h   |                    | Value     | [0-31] | Current saturation % |

### Absolute Value Register Format

The IIDC Specification defines the Absolute Value CSRs. Each set of absolute value CSRs consists of three registers (quadlets): a minimum value, a maximum value (both read only) and the current value. The IIDC specification defines the offsets of the Absolute Value CSRs for each of the camera features, as described in *Current Absolute Value Register Offsets* [on previous page](#)

| Offset | Name           | Field     | Bit    | Description                                |
|--------|----------------|-----------|--------|--|
| 000h   | Absolute Value | Min_Value | [0-31] | Minimum value for this feature. Read only. |
| 004h   |                | Max_Value | [0-31] | Maximum value for this feature. Read only. |
| 008h   |                | Value     | [0-31] | Current value of this feature.             |

|  |      |       |       |
|--|------|-------|-------|
| 0-7  | 8-15 | 16-23 | 24-31 |
| Floating-point value with IEEE/REAL*4 format |      |       |       |

| Sign(S) | Exponent(exp) | Mantissa(m) |
|---------|---------------|-------------|
| 1bit    | 8bit          | 23bit       |

### Units of Value for Absolute Value CSR Registers

The following tables describe the real-world units that are used for the absolute value registers. Each value is either Absolute (value is an absolute value) or Relative (value is an absolute value, but the reference is system dependent).

| Feature element name | Function           | Unit | Unit Description | Reference point | Value Type |
|----------------------|--------------------|------|------------------|-----------------|------------|
| Brightness           | Black level offset | %    |                  | ----            | Absolute   |
| Auto Exposure        | Auto Exposure      | EV   | exposure value   | 0               | Relative   |
| White_Balance        | White Balance      | K    | kelvin           | ----            | Absolute   |
| Hue                  | Hue                | deg  | degree           | 0               | Relative   |
| Saturation           | Saturation         | %    |                  | 100             | Relative   |
| Shutter              | Integration time   | s    | seconds          | ----            | Absolute   |
| Gain                 | Circuit gain       | dB   | decibel          | 0               | Relative   |
| Iris                 | Iris               | F    | F number         | ----            | Absolute   |
| Focus                | Focus              | m    | meter            | ----            | Absolute   |

| Feature element name | Function         | Unit  | Unit Description  | Reference point | Value Type |
|----------------------|------------------|-------|-------------------|-----------------|------------|
| Trigger              | External Trigger | times |                   | ---             | Absolute   |
| Trigger_Delay        | Trigger Delay    | S     | seconds           | ---             | Absolute   |
| Frame_Rate           | Frame rate       | fps   | frames per second | ---             | Absolute   |

## Determining Absolute Value Register Values

The Absolute Value CSRs store 32-bit floating-point values with IEEE/REAL\*4 format, as described in [Absolute Value Register Format on previous page](#). To programmatically determine the floating point equivalents of the minimum, maximum and current hexadecimal values for a property such as shutter, using the FlyCapture SDK:

1. Read the ABS\_CSR\_HI\_INQ\_7 register 71Ch to obtain the quadlet offset for the absolute value CSR for shutter.

```
cam.ReadRegister(context, 0x71C, &ulValue);
```

2. The 32-bit ulValue is a quadlet offset, so multiply by 4 to get the actual offset.

```
ulValue = ulValue * 4; // ulValue == 0x3C0244, actual offset == 0xF00910
```

This offset represents the offset from the base address 0xFFFF Fxxx xxxx. Since the PGR FlyCapture API automatically takes into account the base offset 0xFFFF F0F0 0000, the actual offset in this example would be 0x910.

3. Use the offset obtained to read the min, max and current absolute values and convert the 32-bit hexadecimal values to floating point.

```
// declare a union of a floating point and unsigned long
typedef union _AbsValueConversion
{
    unsigned long ulValue;
    float fValue;
} AbsValueConversion;

float fMinShutter, fMaxShutter, fCurShutter; AbsValueConversion
minShutter, maxShutter, curShutter;

// read the 32-bit hex value into the unsigned long member
cam.ReadRegister(context, 0x910, &minShutter.ulValue );
cam.ReadRegister(context, 0x914, &maxShutter.ulValue );
cam.ReadRegister(context, 0x918, &curShutter.ulValue );

fMinShutter = minShutter.fValue;
```

```
fMaxShutter = maxShutter.fValue;  
  
fCurShutter = curShutter.fValue;
```



*To get and set absolute values using the FlyCapture SDK, use the `GetProperty` and `SetProperty` functions to get or set the `absValue` member of the `Property` struct. Refer to the FlyCapture SDK Help for function definitions.*

## Setting Absolute Value Register Values

The user must write a 1 to bit [1] of the associated feature CSR to change the Value field of this register from being read-only. For example, to enable absolute value control of shutter, bit [1] of SHUTTER register 0x81C must be set to 1. In the FlyCapture API, this can also be done by setting the `absControl` member of the of the desired property structure to true.

## Appendix E: Isochronous Packet Format

Unlike simple register reads and writes, which are handled by asynchronous communication, the camera transmits image data using a guaranteed bandwidth mechanism known as isochronous data transmission. This section details the format and bandwidth requirements of the isochronous data broadcast by the camera. The amount of isochronous bandwidth allocated to a camera must be negotiated with the isochronous resource manager node (generally the 1394 host adapter in the PC). Every video format, mode and frame rate has a different video data format.

### Isochronous Packet Format for Format\_0, Format\_1 and Format\_2

The following table shows the format of the first quadlet (a quadlet being four bytes) in the data field of an isochronous data block.

| 0-7                | 8-15 | 16-23 | 24-31   |
|--------------------|------|-------|---------|
| data_length        |      | tag   | channel |
|                    |      | tCode | sy      |
| header_CRC         |      |       |         |
| Video data payload |      |       |         |
| data_CRC           |      |       |         |

**Table E.1: Isochronous Data Packet Format for Format\_0, Format\_1 and Format\_2**

**data\_length** – the number of bytes in the data field.

**tag** – (tag field) shall be set to 0

**channel** – isochronous channel number, as programmed in the iso\_channel field of the cam\_sta\_ctrl register

**tCode** – (transaction code) shall be set to the isochronous data block packet tCode.

**sy** – (synchronization value) shall be set to 0001h on the first isochronous data block of a frame, and shall be set to zero on all other isochronous data blocks.

**Video data payload** – shall contain the digital video information.

### Isochronous Bandwidth Requirements

The amount of isochronous bandwidth required to transmit images from the camera is dependent on the format and frame rate. The following table describes the bandwidth requirements for each available format and frame rate. Each entry in the table indicates the required bandwidth in number of lines, pixels and quadlets per isochronous period. Bandwidth requirements for Format 7 are negotiated with the camera at runtime.

#### Format\_0

| Mode | Video Format                         | 240fps             | 120fps             | 60fps              | 30fps              | 15fps              | 7.5fps             | 3.75fps     | 1.875fps     |
|------|--------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------|--------------|
| 0    | 160x120<br>YUV(4:4:4)<br>24bit/pixel | 4H<br>640p<br>480q | 2H<br>320p<br>240q | 1H<br>160p<br>120q | 1/2H<br>80p<br>60q | 1/4H<br>40p<br>30q | 1/8H<br>20p<br>15q |             |              |
| 1    | 320x240<br>YUV(4:2:2)                | 8)8H<br>2560p      | 4)4H<br>1280p      | 2H<br>640p         | 1H<br>320p         | 1/2H<br>160p       | 1/4H<br>80p        | 1/8H<br>40p | 1/16H<br>20p |

| Mode | Video Format                         | 240fps                    | 120fps                  | 60fps                  | 30fps                 | 15fps                | 7.5fps               | 3.75fps              | 1.875fps           |
|------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
|      | 16bit/pixel                          | 1280q                     | 640q                    | 320q                   | 160q                  | 80q                  | 40q                  | 20q                  | 10q                |
| 2    | 640x480<br>YUV(4:1:1)<br>12bit/pixel | 16)16H<br>10240p<br>3840q | 8)8H<br>5120p<br>1920q  | 4)4H<br>2560p<br>960q  | 2)2H<br>1280p<br>480q | 1H<br>640p<br>240q   | 1/2H<br>320p<br>120q | 1/4H<br>160p<br>60q  | 1/8H<br>80p<br>30q |
| 3    | 640x480<br>YUV(4:2:2)<br>16bit/pixel | 32)16H<br>10240p<br>5120q | 16)8H<br>5120p<br>2560q | 8)4H<br>2560p<br>1280q | 4)2H<br>1280p<br>640q | 2)1H<br>640p<br>320q | 1/2H<br>320p<br>160q | 1/4H<br>160p<br>80q  | 1/8H<br>80p<br>40q |
| 4    | 640x480 RGB<br>24bit/pixel           | 32)16H<br>10240p<br>7680q | 16)8H<br>5120p<br>3840q | 8)4H<br>2560p<br>1920q | 4)2H<br>1280p<br>960q | 2)1H<br>640p<br>480q | 1/2H<br>320p<br>240q | 1/4H<br>160p<br>120q | 1/8H<br>80p<br>60q |
| 5    | 640x480 Y<br>(Mono)<br>8bit/pixel    | 16)16H<br>10240p<br>2560q | 8)8H<br>5120p<br>1280q  | 4)4H<br>2560p<br>640q  | 2)2H<br>1280p<br>320  | 1H<br>640p<br>160q   | 1/2H<br>320p<br>80q  | 1/4H<br>160p<br>40q  | 1/8H<br>80p<br>20q |
| 6    | 640x480 Y<br>(Mono)<br>16bit/pixel   | 32)16H<br>10240p<br>5120q | 16)8H<br>5120p<br>2560q | 8)4H<br>2560p<br>1280q | 4)2H<br>1280p<br>640q | 2)1H<br>640p<br>320q | 1/2H<br>320p<br>160q | 1/4H<br>160p<br>80q  | 1/8H<br>80p<br>40q |
| 7    | Reserved                             |                           |                         |                        |                       |                      |                      |                      |                    |

**Format\_1**

| Mode | Video Format                          | 240fps                    | 120fps                    | 60fps                   | 30fps                    | 15fps                    | 7.5fps                 | 3.75fps                | 1.875fps             |
|------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| 0    | 800*600<br>YUV(4:2:2)<br>16bit/pixel  | 32)20H<br>16000p<br>8000q | 16)10H<br>8000p<br>4000q  | 8)5H<br>4000p<br>2000q  | 4)5/2H<br>2000p<br>1000q | 2)5/4H<br>1000p<br>500q  | 5/8H<br>500p<br>250q   | 5/16H<br>250p<br>125q  |                      |
| 1    | 800x600 RGB<br>24bit/pixel            |                           | 32)10H<br>8000p<br>600q   | 16)5H<br>4000p<br>3000q | 8)5/2H<br>2000p<br>1500q | 4)5/4H<br>1000p<br>750q  | 2)5/8H<br>500p<br>375q |                        |                      |
| 2    | 800x600 Y<br>(Mono)<br>8bit/pixel     | 16)20H<br>16000p<br>4000q | 8)10H<br>8000p<br>2000q   | 4)5H<br>4000p<br>1000q  | 2)5/2H<br>2000p<br>500q  | 5/4H<br>1000p<br>250q    | 5/8H<br>500p<br>125q   |                        |                      |
| 3    | 1024x768<br>YUV(4:2:2)<br>16bit/pixel |                           | 32)12H<br>12288p<br>6144q | 16)6H<br>6144p<br>3072q | 8)3H<br>3072p<br>1536q   | 4)3/2H<br>1536p<br>768q  | 2)3/4H<br>768p<br>384q | 3/8H<br>384p<br>192q   | 3/16H<br>192p<br>96q |
| 4    | 1024x768 RGB<br>24bit/pixel           |                           |                           | 32)6H<br>6144p<br>4608q | 16)3H<br>3072p<br>2304q  | 8)3/2H<br>1536p<br>1152q | 4)3/4H<br>768p<br>576q | 2)3/8H<br>384p<br>288q | 3/16<br>192p<br>144q |
| 5    | 1024x768 Y<br>(Mono)<br>8bit/pixel    | 32)24H<br>24576p<br>6144q | 16)12H<br>12288p<br>3072q | 8)6H<br>6144p<br>1536q  | 4)3H<br>3072p<br>768q    | 2)3/2H<br>1536p<br>384q  | 3/4H<br>768p<br>192q   | 3/8H<br>384p<br>96q    | 3/16H<br>192p<br>48q |
| 6    | 800x600 Y<br>(Mono16)<br>16bit/pixel  | 32)20H<br>16000p<br>8000q | 16)10H<br>8000p<br>4000q  | 8)5H<br>4000p<br>2000q  | 4)5/2H<br>2000p<br>1000q | 2)5/4H<br>1000p<br>500q  | 5/8H<br>500p<br>250q   | 5/16H<br>250p<br>125q  |                      |
| 7    | 1024x768 Y<br>(Mono16)<br>16bit/pixel |                           | 32)12H<br>12288p<br>6144q | 16)6H<br>6144p<br>3072q | 8)3H<br>3072p<br>1536q   | 4)3/2H<br>1536p<br>768q  | 2)3/4H<br>768p<br>384q | 3/8H<br>384p<br>192q   | 3/16H<br>192p<br>96q |

**Format\_2**

| Mode | Video Format                           | 120fps                    | 60fps                     | 30fps                    | 15fps                     | 7.5fps                   | 3.75fps                 | 1.875fps                |
|------|--|---------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 0    | 1280x960<br>YUV(4:2:2)<br>16bit/pixel  |                           | 32)8H<br>10240p<br>5120q  | 16)4H<br>5120p<br>2560q  | 8)2H<br>2560p<br>1280q    | 4)1H<br>1280p<br>640q    | 2)1/2H<br>640p<br>320q  | 1)4H<br>320p<br>160q    |
| 1    | 1280x960<br>RGB<br>24bit/pixel         |                           | 32)8H<br>10240p<br>7680q  | 16)4H<br>5120p<br>3840q  | 8)2H<br>2560p<br>1920q    | 4)1H<br>1280p<br>960q    | 2)1/2H<br>640p<br>480q  | 1)4H<br>320p<br>240q    |
| 2    | 1280x960<br>Y (Mono)<br>8bit/pixel     | 32)16H<br>20480p<br>5120q | 16)8H<br>10240p<br>2560q  | 8)4H<br>5120p<br>1280q   | 4)2H<br>2560p<br>640q     | 2)1H<br>1280p<br>320q    | 1)2H<br>640p<br>160q    | 1)4H<br>320p<br>80q     |
| 3    | 1600x1200<br>YUV(4:2:2)<br>16bit/pixel |                           | 32)10H<br>16000p<br>8000q | 16)5H<br>8000p<br>4000q  | 8)5/2H<br>4000p<br>2000q  | 4)5/4H<br>2000p<br>1000q | 2)5/8H<br>1000p<br>500q | 5)16H<br>500p<br>250q   |
| 4    | 1600x1200<br>RGB<br>24bit/pixel        |                           |                           | 32)5H<br>8000p<br>6000q  | 16)5/2H<br>4000p<br>3000q | 8)5/4H<br>2000p<br>1500q | 4)5/8H<br>1000p<br>750q | 2)5)16H<br>500p<br>375q |
| 5    | 1600x1200<br>Y (Mono)<br>8bit/pixel    | 32)20H<br>32000p<br>8000q | 16)10H<br>16000p<br>4000q | 8)5H<br>8000p<br>2000q   | 4)5/2H<br>4000p<br>1000q  | 2)5/4H<br>2000p<br>500q  | 5)8H<br>1000p<br>250q   | 5)16H<br>500p<br>125q   |
| 6    | 1280x960<br>Y (Mono16)<br>16bit/pixel  |                           | 32)8H<br>10240p<br>5120q  | 16)4H<br>5120p<br>2560q  | 8)2H<br>2560p<br>1280q    | 4)1H<br>1280p<br>640q    | 2)1/2H<br>640p<br>320q  | 1)4H<br>320p<br>160q    |
| 7    | 1600x1200<br>Y(Mono16)<br>16bit/pixel  |                           | 32)10H<br>16000p<br>8000q | 16)5H<br>8000p<br>4000qH | 8)5/2H<br>4000p<br>2000q  | 4)5/4H<br>2000p<br>1000q | 2)5/8H<br>1000p<br>500q | 5)16H<br>500p<br>250q   |

[--H – Lines/Packet]  
 [--p – Pixels/Packet]  
 [--q – Quadlets/Packet]

2) : required S200 data rate  
 4) : required S400 data rate  
 8) : required S800 data rate  
 16) : required S1600 data rate  
 32) : required S3200 data rate

**Isochronous Packet Format for Format\_7**

The following table shows the format of the first quadlet (a quadlet being four bytes) in the data field of an isochronous data block.

| 0-7                | 8-15 | 16-23 | 24-31   |
|--------------------|------|-------|---------|
| data_length        |      | tag   | channel |
|                    |      | tCode | sy      |
| header_CRC         |      |       |         |
| Video data payload |      |       |         |
| data_CRC           |      |       |         |

**Table E.2: Isochronous Data Packet Format for Format\_7**

**data\_length** – the number of bytes in the data field.

**tag** – (tag field) shall be set to 0

**channel** – isochronous channel number, as programmed in the iso\_channel field of the cam\_sta\_ctrl register

**tCode** – (transaction code) shall be set to the isochronous data block packet tCode.

**sy** – (synchronization value) shall be set to 0001h on the first isochronous data block of a frame, and shall be set to zero on all other isochronous data blocks.

**Video data payload** – shall contain the digital video information.

## Appendix F: Glossary

| Term                               | Definition   |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <i>1394a</i>                       | An Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE) interface standard capable of transferring data at a rate of 400Mbit per second.   |
| <i>1394b</i>                       | An IEEE interface standard capable of transferring data at a rate of 800Mbit per second.   |
| <i>Absolute Values</i>             | Real-world values, such as milliseconds (ms), decibels (dB) or percent (%). Using the absolute values is easier and more efficient than applying complex conversion formulas to integer values.  |
| <i>Analog-to-Digital Converter</i> | Often abbreviated as ADC or A/D converted, it is a device that converts a voltage to a digital number.   |
| <i>API</i>                         | Application Programming Interface. Essentially a library of software functions.  |
| <i>Asynchronous Transmission</i>   | The transfer of image data from the camera to the PC that is regulated by an external signal, such as a trigger. Asynchronous transfers do not guarantee when data will be transferred. However, they do guarantee that data will arrive as sent. Asynchronous transfers may be used when data integrity is a higher priority than speed. An example might be an image data transfer to a printer, where speed is less critical than getting the image pixels correct. Asynchronous transfers are initiated from a single node, designated the 'requestor', to or from the address space of another node, designated the 'responder'. Asynchronous requests are packet-based. The requestor node generates a request packet that the 1394 bus sends to the responder node. The responder node is responsible for handling the request packet and creating a response packet that is sent back to the requestor node to complete a single transfer. There are three types of 1394 asynchronous transfers: Read, Write and Lock. |
| <i>BPP</i>                         | Bytes per packet. An image is broken into multiple packets of data, which are then streamed isochronously to the host system. Each packet is made up of multiple bytes of data.  |
| <i>Brightness (%)</i>              | This is essentially the level of black in an image. A high brightness will result in a low amount of black in the image. In the absence of noise, the minimum pixel value in an image acquired with a brightness setting of 1% should be 1% of the A/D converter's minimum value.  |
| <i>Config ROM</i>                  | Configuration read-only memory. A section of memory dedicated to describing low-level device characteristics such as Model and Vendor ID, IEEE-1394 version compliance, base address quadlet offsets, etc.   |
| <i>Color Processing</i>            | Also known as 'interpolation,' an algorithm for converting raw Bayer-tiled image data into full color images. Depending on camera model, this process takes place either on-camera or on the PC. For more information, refer to <a href="#">Knowledge Base Article 33</a> .  |
| <i>Dynamic Range</i>               | The difference between the maximum and minimum amounts of light that a sensor can measure. This is bounded on the upper end by the maximum charge that any pixel can contain (sensor full well depth) and at the lower end by the small charge that every sensor spontaneously generates (read noise).   |
| <i>Exposure (EV)</i>               | This is the average intensity of the image. It will use other available (non-manually adjustable) controls to adjust the image.  |



| Term                            | Definition  |
|---------------------------------|---|
| <i>Firmware</i>                 | Programming that is inserted into programmable read-only memory, thus becoming a permanent part of a computing device. Firmware is created and tested like software and can be loaded onto the camera.  |
| <i>Format_7</i>                 | Encompasses partial or custom image video formats and modes, such as region of interest of pixel binned modes. Format_7 modes and frame rates are defined by the camera manufacturer, as opposed to the IIDC specification.   |
| <i>FPS</i>                      | Frames Per Second.  |
| <i>Frame Rate</i>               | Often defined in terms of number of frames per second (FPS) or frequency (Hz). This is the speed at which the camera is streaming images to the host system. It basically defines the interval between consecutive image transfers.   |
| <i>Gain (dB)</i>                | The amount of amplification that is applied to a pixel by the A/D converter. An increase in gain can result in a brighter image and an increase in noise.   |
| <i>Gamma</i>                    | Gamma defines the function between incoming light level and output picture level. Gamma can also be useful in emphasizing details in the darkest and/or brightest regions of the image.   |
| <i>GPIO</i>                     | General Purpose Input/Output.   |
| <i>Grabbing Images</i>          | A commonly-used phrase to refer to the process of enabling isochronous transfers on a camera, which allows image data to be streamed from the camera to the host system.  |
| <i>Hz</i>                       | Hertz. A unit of frequency; one Hertz has a periodic interval of one second. Often used interchangeably with FPS as a measure of frame rate.  |
| <i>Isochronous Transmission</i> | The transfer of image data from the camera to the PC in a continual stream that is regulated by an internal clock. Isochronous transfers on the 1394 bus guarantee timely delivery of data. Specifically, isochronous transfers are scheduled by the bus so that they occur once every 125 $\mu$ s. Each 125 $\mu$ s timeslot on the bus is called a frame. Isochronous transfers, unlike asynchronous transfers, do not guarantee the integrity of data through a transfer. No response packet is sent for an isochronous transfer. Isochronous transfers are useful for situations that require a constant data rate but not necessarily data integrity. Examples include video or audio data transfers. Isochronous transfers on the 1394 bus do not target a specific node. Isochronous transfers are broadcast transfers which use channel numbers to determine destination. |
| <i>Lookup Table</i>             | A matrix of gamma functions for each color value of the current pixel encoding format.  |
| <i>Node</i>                     | An addressable device attached to a bus. Although multiple nodes may be present within the same physical enclosure (module), each has its own bus interface and address space and may be reset independently of the others.   |
| <i>Node ID</i>                  | A 16-bit number that uniquely differentiates a node from all other nodes within a group of interconnected buses. Although the structure of the node ID is bus-dependent, it usually consists of a bus ID portion and a local ID portion. The most significant bits of the node ID are the same for all nodes on the same bus; this is the bus ID. The least-significant bits of the node ID are unique for each node on the same bus; this is called the local ID. The local ID may be assigned as a consequence of bus initialization.   |
| <i>One Push</i>                 | For use when a control is in manual adjust mode, One Push sets a parameter to an auto-adjusted value, then returns the control to manual adjust mode.   |
| <i>PHY</i>                      | Physical layer. Each 1394 PHY provides the interface to the 1394 bus and performs key functions in the communications process, such as bus configuration, speed signaling and detecting transfer speed, 1394 bus control arbitration, and others.   |

| Term                              | Definition  |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| <i>Pan</i>                        | A mechanism to horizontally move the current portion of the sensor that is being imaged. In stereo and spherical cameras, Pan controls which individual sensors transmit images.  |
| <i>Pixel Clock</i>                | The rate at which the sensor outputs voltage signals in each pixel from the optical input.  |
| <i>Pixel Format</i>               | The encoding scheme by which color or greyscale images are produced from raw image data.  |
| <i>Quadlet</i>                    | A 4 byte (32-bit) value.  |
| <i>Quadlet Offset</i>             | The number of quadlets separating a base address and the desired CSR address. For example, if the base address is 0xFFFFF0F00000 and the value of the quadlet offset is 0x100, then the actual address offset is 0x400 and the actual address 0xFFFFF0F00400.   |
| <i>Register</i>                   | A term used to describe quadlet-aligned addresses that may be read or written by bus transactions.  |
| <i>Saturation</i>                 | This is how far a color is from a gray image of the same intensity. For example, red is highly saturated, whereas a pale pink is not.   |
| <i>SDK</i>                        | Software Development Kit  |
| <i>Sharpness</i>                  | This works by filtering the image to reduce blurred edges.  |
| <i>Shutter</i>                    | A mechanism to control the length of time the sensor is exposed to light from the image field for each frame. In milliseconds (ms), it is the amount of time that the shutter stays open, also known as the exposure or integration time. The shutter time defines the start and end point of when light falls on the imaging sensor. At the end of the exposure period, all charges are simultaneously transferred to light-shielded areas of the sensor. The charges are then shifted out of the light shielded areas of the sensor and read out. |
| <i>Signal-to-Noise Ratio (dB)</i> | The difference between the ideal signal that you expect and the real-world signal that you actually see is usually called noise. The relationship between signal and noise is called the signal-to-noise ratio (SNR). SNR is calculated using the general methodology outlined in <a href="#">Knowledge Base Article 142</a> .  |
| <i>SXGA</i>                       | 1280x1024 pixel resolution  |
| <i>Tilt</i>                       | A mechanism to vertically move the current portion of the sensor that is being imaged.  |
| <i>Trigger</i>                    | A signal to which the acquisition of images by the camera is synchronized. Triggers can be from an outside electrical source (external) or software-generated (internal).   |
| <i>UXGA</i>                       | 1600x1200 pixel resolution  |
| <i>VGA</i>                        | 640x480 pixel resolution  |
| <i>White Balance</i>              | A method to enable white areas of an image to appear correctly by modifying the gain of red and blue channels relative to the green channel. White balance can be used to accommodate differing lighting conditions.  |
| <i>XVGA</i>                       | 1024x768 pixel resolution   |

## Appendix G: Contacting Point Grey Research

For any questions, concerns or comments please contact us via the following methods:

|  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| <b>Email:</b>                          | For all general questions about Point Grey Research please contact us at <a href="mailto:info@ptgrey.com">info@ptgrey.com</a> . For technical support (existing customers only) contact us at <a href="http://www.ptgrey.com/support/contact/">www.ptgrey.com/support/contact/</a> . |   |
| <b>Knowledge Base:</b>                 | Find answers to commonly asked questions in our knowledge base at <a href="http://www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/">www.ptgrey.com/support/kb/</a> .   |   |
| <b>Downloads:</b>                      | Users can download the latest manuals and software from <a href="http://www.ptgrey.com/support/downloads/">www.ptgrey.com/support/downloads/</a> .   |   |
| <b>Main Office:</b>                    | <b>Mailing Address:</b><br>Point Grey Research, Inc.<br>12051 Riverside Way<br>Richmond, BC, Canada<br>V6W 1K7   | <b>Tel:</b> +1 (604) 242-9937<br><b>Toll-free</b> (North America only):<br>+1 (866) 765-0827<br><b>Fax:</b> +1 (604) 242-9938<br><a href="mailto:sales@ptgrey.com">sales@ptgrey.com</a> |
| <b>Distributors</b>                    |  |   |
| USA                                    | <b>Tel:</b> +1 (866) 765-0827<br><a href="mailto:na-sales@ptgrey.com">na-sales@ptgrey.com</a>  |   |
| Europe & Israel                        | <b>Mailing Address:</b><br>Point Grey Research GmbH<br>Schwieberdinger Strasse 60<br>71636 Ludwigsburg<br>Germany  | <b>Tel:</b> +49 7141 488817-0<br><b>Fax:</b> +49 7141 488817-99<br><a href="mailto:eu-sales@ptgrey.com">eu-sales@ptgrey.com</a>   |
| Japan                                  | ViewPLUS Inc. ( <a href="http://www.viewplus.co.jp/">www.viewplus.co.jp/</a> )   |   |
| Korea                                  | Cylod Co. Ltd. ( <a href="http://www.cylod.com">www.cylod.com</a> )  |   |
| China                                  | LUSTER LightVision Tech. Co., Ltd ( <a href="http://www.lusterlighttech.com">www.lusterlighttech.com</a> )   |   |
| Singapore,<br>Malaysia and<br>Thailand | Voltrium Systems Pte Ltd. ( <a href="http://www.voltrium.com.sg">www.voltrium.com.sg</a> )   |   |
| Taiwan                                 | Apo Star Co., Ltd. ( <a href="http://www.apostar.com.tw">www.apostar.com.tw</a> )  |   |

## Appendix H: Revision History

| Revision | Date              | Notes   |
|----------|-------------------|---|
| 1.0      | February 22, 2011 | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Initial version</li></ul> |

# Index

## 1

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| 1394 base address.....              | 123 |
| 1394.b capability, determining..... | 138 |
| 1394b connector.....                | 29  |
| 16-bit Mono data format .....       | 47  |

## A

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| A/D converter.....                     | 13  |
| absolute value mode.....               | 17  |
| absolute value registers.....          | 151 |
| absolute values                        |     |
| shutter conversion.....                | 90  |
| accessories.....                       | 28  |
| AE_ROI register 1A70-1A74h.....        | 95  |
| API                                    |     |
| camera control.....                    | 18  |
| artifacts.....                         | 120 |
| asynchronous trigger.....              | 49  |
| between trigger behavior.....          | 50  |
| ensuring trigger armed.....            | 57  |
| maximum frame rate.....                | 50  |
| minimum pulse length.....              | 49  |
| timing.....                            | 49  |
| auto control.....                      | 16  |
| auto exposure.....                     | 92  |
| auto exposure on ROI.....              | 95  |
| AUTO_EXPOSURE register 804h.....       | 93  |
| AUTO_EXPOSURE_RANGE register.....      | 93  |
| 1088h.....                             |     |
| AUTO_GAIN_RANGE register 10A0h.....    | 94  |
| AUTO_SHUTTER_RANGE register 1098h..... | 94  |

## B

|   |    |
|---|----|
| bandwidth                                 |    |
| exceeding limitations using Format_7..... | 37 |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| maximum cameras on bus.....            | 35  |
| maximum frame rate.....                | 35  |
| base address.....                      | 123 |
| basic functions                        |     |
| inquiry registers.....                 | 137 |
| Bayer data                             |     |
| outputting in Y8 or Y16 mode.....      | 48  |
| Bayer Tile color conversion.....       | 107 |
| Bayer tile pattern.....                | 107 |
| BAYER_MONO_CTRL register 1050h.....    | 48  |
| BAYER_TILE_MAPPING register 1040h..... | 108 |
| binning.....                           | 36  |
| blemish pixel correction.....          | 120 |
| Blemish pixel correction.....          | 111 |
| brightness.....                        | 87  |
| BRIGHTNESS register 800h.....          | 87  |
| buffer.....                            | 82  |
| BUILD_TIMESTAMP register 1F40h.....    | 26  |
| bulb shutter trigger mode.....         | 52  |

## C

|   |         |
|---|---------|
| cable length.....                       | 30      |
| calculating register offset.....        | 126     |
| camera control                          |         |
| flycap demo program.....                | 18      |
| FlyCapture API.....                     | 18      |
| third-party applications.....           | 18      |
| camera model.....                       | 25      |
| camera setting conversion formulas..... | 17      |
| camera settings embedded in image.....  | 109     |
| CAMERA_log register 1D00 - 1Dffh.....   | 25, 121 |
| CAMERA_POWER register 610h.....         | 16      |
| circuit                                 |         |
| GPIO bi-directional.....                | 33      |
| GPIO opto-isolated input.....           | 31      |
| GPIO opto-isolated output.....          | 32      |
| cleaning.....                           | 14      |
| color conversion.....                   | 107     |

|  |     |  |         |
|--|-----|--|---------|
| color filter array.....                      | 107 | endianness                                     |         |
| color interpolation.....                     | 107 | Y16 data.....                                  | 47      |
| color processing.....                        | 107 | environmental conditions.....                  | 14, 116 |
| config ROM registers.....                    | 124 | error flags.....                               | 149     |
| configuration sets.....                      | 18  | exposure time.....                             | 88      |
| connector                                    |     | extended shutter.....                          | 89      |
| IEEE-1394b.....                              | 29  | external trigger.....                          | 49      |
| contacting Point Grey.....                   | 163 | between trigger behavior.....                  | 50      |
| conversion formulas for camera settings..... | 17  | ensuring trigger armed.....                    | 57      |
| cooling.....                                 | 14  | maximum frame rate.....                        | 50      |
| CSR base address.....                        | 123 | minimum duration.....                          | 49      |
| CUR_MEM_CH register 624h.....                | 19  | timing.....                                    | 49      |
| CURRENT register 1A58h - 1A5Ch.....          | 23  |  |         |
| CURRENT_FRAME_RATE register 600h.....        | 39  | <b>F</b>                                       |         |
| CURRENT_VIDEO_FORMAT register.....           | 39  | failed frame transmission count.....           | 24, 121 |
| 608h.....                                    |     | feature elements                               |         |
| CURRENT_VIDEO_MODE register 604h.....        | 39  | inquiry registers.....                         | 140     |
| custom image modes.....                      | 36  | feature presence                               |         |
| CYCLE_TIME register.....                     | 111 | inquiry registers.....                         | 138     |
|  |     | filter.....                                    | 117     |
| <b>D</b>                                     |     | firmware                                       |         |
| daisy chaining.....                          | 30  | version.....                                   | 10      |
| data flash.....                              | 27  | FIRMWARE_BUILD_DATE register 1F64h.....        | 27      |
| data formats                                 |     | FIRMWARE_DESCRIPTION register 1F68h-1F7Ch..... |         |
| customizable (Format_7).....                 | 36  | FIRMWARE_VERSION register 1F60h.....           | 26      |
| DATA_DEPTH register 630h.....                | 47  | flash memory.....                              | 27      |
| DATA_FLASH_CTRL register 1240h.....          | 27  | flipped image.....                             | 109     |
| DATA_FLASH_DATA register 1244h.....          | 28  | flycap demo program.....                       | 18      |
| dead pixels.....                             | 120 | FlyCapture API.....                            | 18      |
| debouncer.....                               | 49  | format_7                                       |         |
| Dimensional drawings.....                    | 113 | modes and frame rates.....                     | 41      |
| Dimensions                                   |     | Format_7.....                                  | 36      |
| tripod adapter.....                          | 115 | registers.....                                 | 144     |
| dust protection.....                         | 116 | FORMAT_7_RESIZE_INQ register.....              | 145     |
|  |     | 1AC8h.....                                     |         |
| <b>E</b>                                     |     | formats.....                                   | 40      |
| electrostatic charge.....                    | 14  | changing while triggering.....                 | 50      |
| embedded image information.....              | 109 |  |         |

|  |         |                                      |         |
|--|---------|--------------------------------------|---------|
| customizable (Format_7).....                 | 36      | GPIO_XTRA_PIN_2 register 1134h ..... | 81      |
| inquiry registers.....                       | 127     | GPIO_XTRA_PIN_3 register 1144h ..... | 82      |
| frame buffer.....                            | 82      | GPIO_XTRA_PIN_O register 1114h ..... | 80      |
| frame rate                                   |         | greyscale conversion .....           | 107     |
| calculating maximum in external trigger mode | 50      |                                      |         |
| calculating maximum possible.....            | 35      | H                                    |         |
| inquiry registers.....                       | 127     | handling.....                        | 14      |
| frame rate, partial image mode.....          | 149     | hardware warranty.....               | 2       |
| frame rates.....                             | 40      | HDR registers 1800h -1884h.....      | 46      |
| format_7.....                                | 41      | heat dissipation.....                | 14      |
| FRAME_INFO register 12F8h.....               | 109     | help.....                            | 119     |
| FRAME_RATE register 83Ch.....                | 38      | hexadecimal format.....              | 16      |
| G  |         | high dynamic range (HDR) mode.....   | 46      |
| gain.....                                    | 91, 103 | HORIZONTAL_LINE_FREQ register.....   | 25      |
| GAIN register 820h.....                      | 91      | 1AF4h.....                           |         |
| gamma.....                                   | 96      | host adapter card.....               | 30      |
| GAMMA register 818h.....                     | 96      | hot pixels.....                      | 120     |
| glossary of terms.....                       | 160     | hue.....                             | 102     |
| GPIO.....                                    | 30      | HUE register 810h.....               | 102     |
| bidirectional circuit.....                   | 33      | I                                    |         |
| electrical characteristics.....              | 31      | IEEE-1394b connector.....            | 29      |
| opto-isolated input circuit.....             | 31      | image information embedded.....      | 109     |
| opto-isolated output circuit.....            | 32      | IMAGE_RETRANSMIT register 634h.....  | 83      |
| pulse width modulation (PWM) mode.....       | 78      | indicators (LED).....                | 21, 120 |
| strobe start control.....                    | 71      | infrared (IR) cutoff filter.....     | 117     |
| GPIO_CTRL_PIN_0 register 1110h.....          | 79      | INITIALIZE register 000h.....        | 22      |
| GPIO_CTRL_PIN_1 register 1120h.....          | 80      | input circuit.....                   | 31      |
| GPIO_CTRL_PIN_2 register 1130h.....          | 81      | input pins.....                      | 31      |
| GPIO_CTRL_PIN_3 register 1140h.....          | 81      | inquiry registers                    |         |
| GPIO_STRPAT_CTRL register 110Ch.....         | 70      | basic functions.....                 | 137     |
| GPIO_STRPAT_MASK_PIN_0 register.....         | 70      | feature elements.....                | 140     |
| 1118h.....                                   |         | feature presence.....                | 138     |
| GPIO_STRPAT_MASK_PIN_1 register.....         | 70      | video format/mode/frame rate.....    | 127     |
| 1128h.....                                   |         | integration time.....                | 88      |
| GPIO_STRPAT_MASK_PIN_2 register.....         | 71      | internal trigger.....                | 58      |
| 1138h.....                                   |         | ISO_CHANNEL / ISO_SPEED register.... | 44      |
| GPIO_XTRA register 1104h.....                | 71      | 60Ch.....                            |         |
| GPIO XTRA PIN 1 register 1124h.....          | 80      |                                      |         |

|  |   |
|--|---|
| ISO_EN/CONTINUOUS_SHOT register ... 45         | multiple exposure pulse width trigger mode . 53 |
| 614h .....                                     |   |
| isochronous data bandwidth requirements. 156   |   |
| isochronous data packet format ..... 156, 158  |   |
| isochronous data transmission ..... 43, 156    |   |
| <b>L</b>                                       | <b>O</b>  |
| LED indicators ..... 21, 120                   | offset ..... 87, 126                            |
| LED_CTRL register 1A14h ..... 21, 120          | ON_OFF control ..... 16                         |
| lens   | one-push control ..... 16                       |
| cleaning ..... 14                              | ONE_SHOT/MULTI_SHOT register 61Ch . 45          |
| linux support ..... 18                         | optocoupler ..... 31                            |
| log ..... 25, 121                              | output circuit ..... 32                         |
| long shutter ..... 89                          | output pins ..... 31                            |
| lookup table ..... 96                          | output pulse ..... 61                           |
| LUT ..... 96                                   | overlapped exposure/readout trigger mode . 54   |
| LUT registers 000h - 048h ..... 97             |   |
| <b>M</b>                                       | <b>P</b>  |
| macintosh support ..... 18                     | partial image modes ..... 36                    |
| MAIN_BOARD_INFO regiser 1F24h ..... 25         | PCI card ..... 30                               |
| manual control ..... 16                        | PGM file format for Y16 images ..... 47         |
| maximum cameras on bus ..... 35                | physical description ..... 113                  |
| maximum frame rate ..... 35                    | pinout  |
| MEM_SAVE_CH register 620h ..... 19             | GPIO ..... 30                                   |
| memory   | IEEE-1394b connector ..... 29                   |
| flash memory ..... 27                          | PIO_DIRECTION register 11F8h ..... 60           |
| memory channel registers ..... 19              | pixel binning ..... 36                          |
| memory channels ..... 18                       | pixel correction ..... 111                      |
| MEMORY_SAVE register 618h ..... 19             | PIXEL_CLOCK_FREQ register 1AF0h ..... 25        |
| mirror image ..... 109                         | PIXEL_DEFECT_CTRL register 1A60h ... 112        |
| MIRROR_IMAGE_CTRL register 1054h .. 109        | Point Grey                                      |
| modes ..... 40                                 | contacting ..... 163                            |
| inquiry registers ..... 127                    | power   |
| monochrome conversion ..... 107                | interface ..... 15                              |
| mounting ..... 117                             | presence of features                            |
| camera case ..... 117                          | inquiry registers ..... 138                     |
| multi-shot trigger mode ..... 55               | properties                                      |
| multiple exposure preset trigger mode ..... 53 | when settings take effect ..... 43              |
|  | pulse width modulation (PWM) mode ..... 78      |
|  | (GPIO) .....                                    |
|  | <b>Q</b>  |
|  | quadlet offsets ..... 126                       |



|  |         |
|--|---------|
| <b>R</b>                               |         |
| raw Bayer data                         |         |
| outputting in Y8 or Y16 mode.....      | 48      |
| raw data                               |         |
| accessing.....                         | 107     |
| interpolating.....                     | 107     |
| region of interest (ROI).....          | 36      |
| region of interest exposure.....       | 95      |
| registers                              |         |
| about.....                             | 16      |
| absolute value.....                    | 17, 151 |
| calculating address.....               | 126     |
| config ROM.....                        | 124     |
| Format_7 video mode.....               | 144     |
| inquiry.....                           | 17, 127 |
| memory map.....                        | 123     |
| registers commonly accessed            |         |
| AE_ROI 1A70-1A74h.....                 | 95      |
| AUTO_EXPOSURE 804h.....                | 93      |
| AUTO_EXPOSURE_RANGE 1088h.....         | 93      |
| AUTO_GAIN_RANGE 10A0h.....             | 94      |
| AUTO_SHUTTER_RANGE 1098h.....          | 94      |
| BAYER_MONO_CTRL 1050h.....             | 48      |
| BAYER_TILE_MAPPING 1040h.....          | 108     |
| BRIGHTNESS 800h.....                   | 87      |
| BUILD_TIMESTAMP 1F40h.....             | 26      |
| CAMERA_LOG 1D00 - 1DFFh.....           | 25, 121 |
| CUR_MEM_CH 624h.....                   | 19      |
| CURRENT 1A58h - 1A5Ch.....             | 23      |
| CURRENT_VIDEO_FORMAT 608h.....         | 39      |
| CURRENT_VIDEO_MODE 604h.....           | 39      |
| DATA_DEPTH 630h.....                   | 47      |
| DATA_FLASH_CTRL 1240h.....             | 27      |
| DATA_FLASH_DATA 1244h.....             | 28      |
| FIRMWARE_BUILD_DATE 1F64h.....         | 27      |
| FIRMWARE_DESCRIPTION 1F68 - 1F7Ch..... | 27      |
| FIRMWARE_VERSION 1F60h.....            | 26      |
| FRAME_INFO 12F8h.....                  | 109     |
| FRAME_RATE 83Ch.....                   | 38      |
| GAIN 820h.....                         | 91      |
| GAMMA 818h.....                        | 96      |
| GPIO_CTRL_PIN_0 1110h.....             | 79      |
| GPIO_CTRL_PIN_1 1120h.....             | 80      |
| GPIO_CTRL_PIN_2 1130h.....             | 81      |
| GPIO_CTRL_PIN_3 1140h.....             | 81      |
| GPIO_STRPAT_CTRL 110Ch.....            | 70      |
| GPIO_STRPAT_MASK_PIN_0 1118h.....      | 70      |
| GPIO_STRPAT_MASK_PIN_1 1128h.....      | 70      |
| GPIO_STRPAT_MASK_PIN_2 1138h.....      | 71      |
| GPIO_XTRA 1104h.....                   | 71      |
| GPIO_XTRA_PIN_0 1114h.....             | 80      |
| GPIO_XTRA_PIN_1 1124h.....             | 80      |
| GPIO_XTRA_PIN_2 1134h.....             | 81      |
| GPIO_XTRA_PIN_3 1144h.....             | 82      |
| HDR 1800h - 1884h.....                 | 46      |
| HORIZONTAL_LINE_FREQ 1AF4h.....        | 25      |
| HUE 810h.....                          | 102     |
| IMAGE_RETRANSMIT 634h.....             | 83      |
| INITIALIZE 000h.....                   | 22      |
| ISO_CHANNEL / ISO_SPEED 60Ch.....      | 44      |
| ISO_EN / CONTINUOUS_SHOT 614h.....     | 45      |
| LED_CTRL 1A14h.....                    | 21, 120 |
| LUT 80000h - 80048h.....               | 97      |
| MAIN_BOARD_INFO 1F24h.....             | 25      |
| MEMORY_SAVE 618h.....                  | 19      |
| MEMORY_SAVE_CH 620h.....               | 19      |
| MIRROR_IMAGE_CTRL 1054h.....           | 109     |
| ONE_SHOT / MULTI_SHOT 61Ch.....        | 45      |
| PIO_DIRECTION 11F8h.....               | 60      |
| PIXEL_CLOCK_FREQ 1AF0h.....            | 25      |
| PIXEL_DEFECT_CTRL 1A60h.....           | 112     |
| SATURATION 814h.....                   | 101     |
| SENSOR_BOARD_INFO 1F28h.....           | 26      |
| SERIAL_NUMBER 1F20h.....               | 25      |

|                                       |             |  |         |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|--|---------|
| SHARPNESS 808h.....                   | 104         | smear.....                               | 120     |
| SHUTTER 81Ch.....                     | 89          | software trigger.....                    | 58      |
| SOFTWARE_TRIGGER 62Ch.....            | 61          | SOFTWARE_TRIGGER register 62Ch.....      | 61      |
| TEMPERATURE 82Ch.....                 | 23          | specifications.....                      | 11      |
| TEST_PATTERN 104Ch.....               | 86          | standard external trigger mode.....      | 51      |
| TIME_FROM_BUS_RESET 12E4h.....        | 22          | status indicators (LED).....             | 21, 120 |
| TIME_FROM_INITIALIZE 12E0h.....       | 22          | strobe output functionality.....         | 61      |
| TRIGGER_DELAY 834h.....               | 60          | subsampling.....                         | 36      |
| TRIGGER_MODE 830h.....                | 59          | support.....                             | 119     |
| VMODE_ERROR_STATUS 628h.....          | 24, 121     | synchronization                          |         |
| VOLTAGE 1A50h - 1A54h.....            | 22          | multiple cameras.....                    | 48      |
| WHITE_BALANCE 80Ch.....               | 105         |  |         |
| XMIT_FAILURE 12FCh.....               | 24, 121     | <b>T</b>                                 |         |
| reset camera to default settings..... | 22, 124-125 | technical support.....                   | 119     |
| retransmitting images.....            | 82          | TEMPERATURE register 82Ch.....           | 23      |
| RS-232.....                           | 71          | temperature sensor.....                  | 14      |
|                                       |             | Test pattern.....                        | 86      |
| <b>S</b>                              |             | TEST_PATTERN register 104C.....          | 86      |
| saturation.....                       | 101         | third-party applications.....            | 18      |
| SATURATION register 814h.....         | 101         | TIME_FROM_BUS_RESET register 12E4h.....  | 22      |
| saving camera settings.....           | 18          | TIME_FROM_INITIALIZE register 12E0h..... | 22      |
| sensor                                |             | timestamp.....                           | 109     |
| artifacts.....                        | 120         | transmission                             |         |
| sensor response.....                  | 12          | isochronous.....                         | 43      |
| SENSOR_BOARD_INFO register 1F28.....  | 26          | transmission failure                     |         |
| serial communication.....             | 71          | frame count.....                         | 24, 121 |
| SERIAL_NUMBER register 1F20h.....     | 25          | transmitting images.....                 | 82      |
| settings embedded in image.....       | 109         | trigger.....                             | 49      |
| sharpness.....                        | 103         | between trigger behavior.....            | 50      |
| SHARPNESS register 808h.....          | 104         | changing video modes during.....         | 50      |
| shutter.....                          | 88          | ensuring trigger armed.....              | 57      |
| absolute value conversion.....        | 90          | maximum frame rate.....                  | 50      |
| extended.....                         | 89          | minimum duration.....                    | 49      |
| relation to frame rate.....           | 88          | software.....                            | 58      |
| SHUTTER register 81Ch.....            | 89          | timing.....                              | 49      |
| signal debouncer.....                 | 49          | TRIGGER_DELAY register 834h.....         | 60      |
| signal to noise ratio.....            | 47          | TRIGGER_MODE register 830h.....          | 59      |
| skip frames trigger mode.....         | 52          | Trigger_Mode_0.....                      | 51      |

|                       |         |
|-----------------------|---------|
| Trigger_Mode_1.....   | 52      |
| Trigger_Mode_14.....  | 54      |
| Trigger_Mode_15.....  | 55      |
| Trigger_Mode_3.....   | 52      |
| Trigger_Mode_4.....   | 53      |
| Trigger_Mode_5.....   | 53      |
| triggered acquisition |         |
| supported modes.....  | 51      |
| tripod adapter        |         |
| dimensions.....       | 115     |
| troubleshooting.....  | 25, 121 |

## V

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| value field for CSR registers.....  | 17  |
| video format                        |     |
| inquiry registers.....              | 127 |
| VMODE_ERRO_STATUS register.....     | 24, |
| 628h.....                           | 121 |
| VOLTAGE register 1A50h - 1A54h..... | 22  |

## W

|                                     |     |
|-------------------------------------|-----|
| warranty.....                       | 2   |
| white balance.....                  | 104 |
| white blemish pixel correction..... | 111 |
| white pixels.....                   | 120 |
| WHITE_BALANCE register 80Ch.....    | 105 |

## X

|                                  |         |
|----------------------------------|---------|
| XMIT_FAILURE register 12FCh..... | 24, 121 |
|----------------------------------|---------|

## Y

|                      |    |
|----------------------|----|
| Y16 data format..... | 47 |
|----------------------|----|